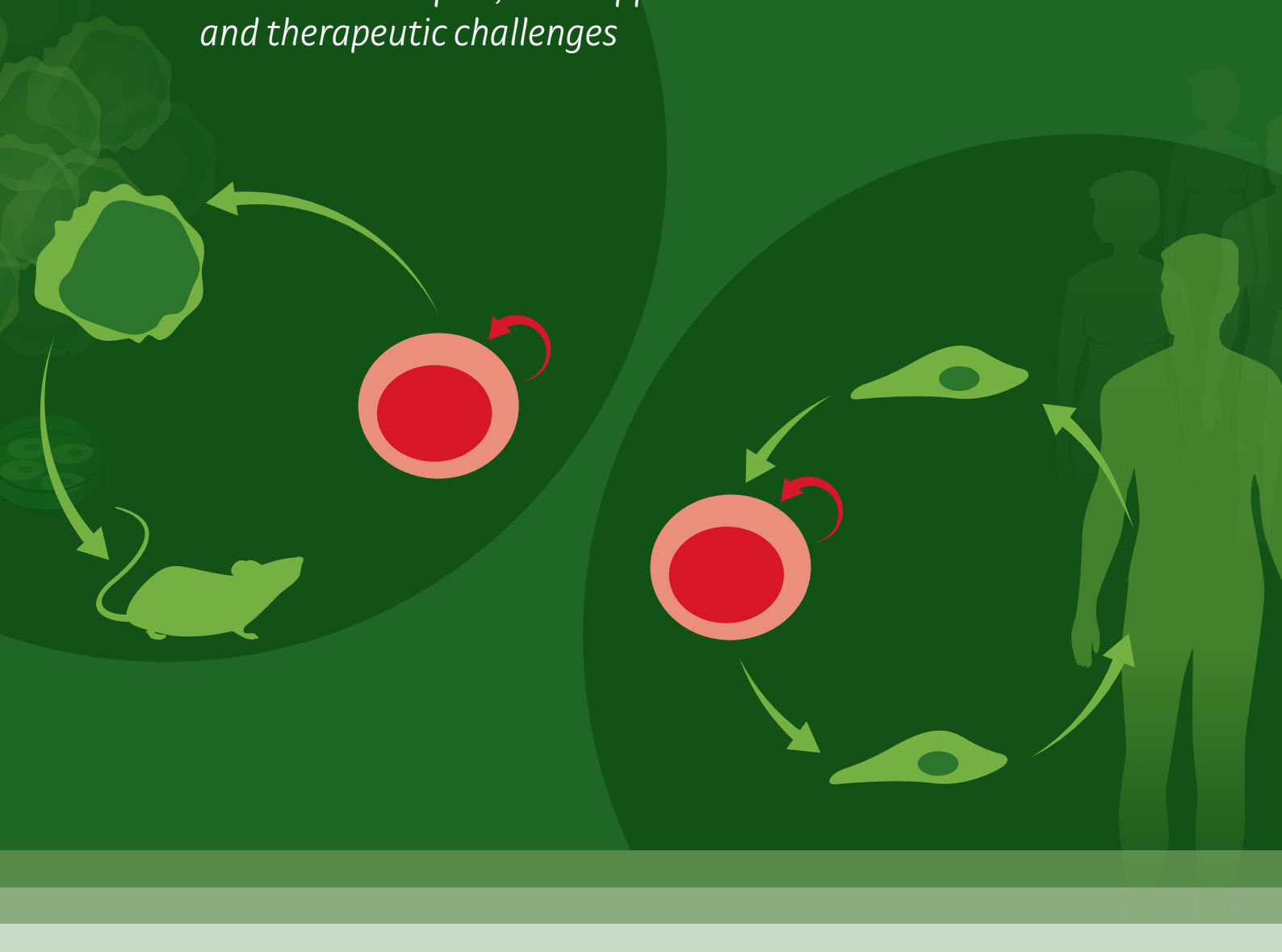
THE EMBO JOURNAL

Focus

Induced Pluripotency & Cellular Reprogramming

Current techniques, basic applications and therapeutic challenges



WILEY

EMBOpress

EMBOpress

FOCUS

Induced Pluripotency & Cellular Reprogramming

Current techniques, basic applications and therapeutic challenges

EDITORS

THE EMBO JOURNAL

David del Alamo
Editor
david.delalamo@embo.org | T +49 6221 8891 309

David received his PhD. from the Madrid's Autónoma University where he studied proximal-distal patterning in Drosophila with Fernando Díaz-Benjumea. As a postdoc, he continued working with Drosophila, first in Marek Mlodzik's lab (Mount Sinai School of Medicine, New York) on the mechanisms of epithelial planar cell polarity generation, and then with François Schweisguth (Institut Pasteur, Paris) where he focused on the modulation of Notch signalling in lateral inhibition. David joined *The EMBO Journal* in 2011.

EMBO *reports*

Barbara Pauly
Senior Editor
pauly@embo.org | T +49 6221 8891 109

Barbara joined *EMBO Reports* in September 2008. She completed her PhD at the University of Munich, focusing on signal transduction in the fresh water polyp Hydra. She worked at the University of California at Berkeley as a post-doctoral researcher, studying the role of the actin cytoskeleton in endocytosis in mammalian cells.

EMBO Molecular Medicine

Céline Carret
Editor
c.carret@embomolmed.org | T +49 6221 8891 411

Céline Carret completed her PhD at the University of Montpellier, France, characterising host immunodominant antigens to fight babesiosis, a parasitic disease caused by a unicellular Apicomplexan parasite closely related to the malaria agent Plasmodium. She further developed her post-doctoral career on malaria working at the Wellcome Trust Sanger Institute in Cambridge, UK and Instituto de Medicina Molecular in Lisbon, Portugal. Céline joined *EMBO Molecular Medicine* as a Scientific Editor in March 2011.

EDITORIAL NOTE

The technologies of induced pluripotency and cellular reprogramming have transformed basic research and sparked hope for therapeutic applications. With this collection of nine reviews by leaders in the field, we aim both to distill the rapid progress made in many laboratories during the nearly ten years of iPSC-based research, and to provide a comprehensive update about state of the art research across the field. This series of reviews focuses on clinically relevant tissues, organs and systems. We present four of them here, and the others are available online at: http://emboj.embopress.org/2015StemCellFocusIssue

We are indebted to the authors and their laboratories who volunteered their expertise, time, energy and resources.

Sign up for e-alerts to receive the latest news from EMBO Press on these and other topics: http://embopress.org/alertsfeeds

The EMBO scientific editors would love to talk to you at an upcoming meeting about your latest research and discuss the EMBO transparent publishing process with you. Please feel free to contact us directly if you miss us *in vivo*.

UPCOMING MEETINGS

7 October, 2015 **CSHL Stem Cell Biology, Cold Spring Harbor, USA**
Céline Carret (EMBO Molecular Medicine)

18 October, 2015 **EMBO Workshop on Stem cell mechanobiology in development and disease, Capri, Italy**
Céline Carret (EMBO Molecular Medicine)

19 October, 2015 **CSHA/ISSCR Joint Meeting – Stem Cells: from Basic Biology to Disease Therapy, Suzhou, China**
Barbara Pauly (EMBO Reports)

CONTENTS

EMBOpress

The EMBO Journal

continued overleaf

CONTENTS

Review

THE EMBO JOURNAL

Focus: Induced Pluripotency & Cellular Reprogramming

Transcription factor-mediated reprogramming toward hematopoietic stem cells

Wataru Ebina[1,2] & Derrick J Rossi[1,2,3,4,*]

Abstract

De novo **generation of human hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs) from renewable cell types has been a long sought-after but elusive goal in regenerative medicine. Paralleling efforts to guide pluripotent stem cell differentiation by manipulating developmental cues, substantial progress has been made recently toward HSC generation via combinatorial transcription factor (TF)-mediated fate conversion, a paradigm established by Yamanaka's induction of pluripotency in somatic cells by mere four TFs. This review will integrate the recently reported strategies to directly convert a variety of starting cell types toward HSCs in the context of hematopoietic transcriptional regulation and discuss how these findings could be further developed toward the ultimate generation of therapeutic human HSCs.**

Keywords cell fate conversion; hematopoietic stem cells; induced reprogramming; transcription factors
DOI 10.15252/embj.201490804 | Received 15 December 2014 | Revised 2 January 2015 | Accepted 2 January 2015 | Published online 20 February 2015
The EMBO Journal (2015) 34: 694–709

Introduction

The process by which differentiated cell types arise from more primitive stem and progenitor cells generally proceeds down a strict lineal hierarchy defined by progressive functional specialization concomitant with restriction of lineage potential. From embryogenesis initiated by a single totipotent zygote to the lifelong homeostasis of organ parenchyma by tissue-specific stem cells, physiological differentiation of progenitor cells largely proceeds both unidirectionally and irreversibly, with differentiated cell types and even intermediate progenitors being remarkably fixed with respect to their cellular identity and functional potential. This paradigm, however, was challenged by the seminal works of Gurdon and others that demonstrated the sufficiency of factors present in oocyte cytoplasm to reverse differentiation of somatic nuclei and allow cloning of whole animals (Briggs & King, 1952; Gurdon, 1962; Wilmut *et al*, 1997). Subsequent efforts to identify the trans-acting factors capable of altering cell fate revealed the central role of transcription factors (TFs) in determining cellular identity. This was first demonstrated by the ability of a single TF MyoD to imbue myogenic identity on fibroblasts (Davis *et al*, 1987), which then established the foundation for the landmark discovery by Yamanaka that mere four TFs are sufficient to induce pluripotency in somatic cells (Takahashi & Yamanaka, 2006; Takahashi *et al*, 2007). These and other studies galvanized numerous investigators to harness the power of TFs in directly respecifying multiple cell fates: hepatocytes (Huang *et al*, 2011; Sekiya & Suzuki, 2011) cardiomyocytes (Ieda *et al*, 2010), cardiac pacemaker cells (Kapoor *et al*, 2013), oligodendrocytes (Najm *et al*, 2013; Yang *et al*, 2013), various types of neurons (Vierbuchen *et al*, 2010; Son *et al*, 2011; Liu *et al*, 2013), neural stem cells (Han *et al*, 2012), pancreatic beta cells (Zhou *et al*, 2008), sertoli cells (Buganim *et al*, 2012), thymic epithelium (Bredenkamp *et al*, 2014), endothelial cells (Han *et al*, 2014), and intestinal progenitors (Morris *et al*, 2014).

Studies of the hematopoietic system have borne profound insights into the transcriptional regulation of cellular identity. The ability to prospectively isolate hematopoietic stem, progenitor, and effector cells with defined lineage potentials has allowed dissection of molecular mechanisms underlying blood differentiation as well as identification of characteristic TFs governing diverse hematopoietic lineages (Orkin, 1995). However, the wave of breakthroughs from cell fate conversion studies transformed the hematopoietic system from a subject of scrutiny to a destination to be reached from alternative cell types. Initial studies focused on manipulating lineage potential by means of oncogenic transformation (Beug *et al*, 1979; Graf *et al*, 1992), lineage switching of hematopoietic progenitors (Heyworth *et al*, 2002), and direct cell fate conversion toward non-progenitor blood cells such as macrophages (Xie *et al*, 2004; Laiosa *et al*, 2006; Feng *et al*, 2008); however, substantial progress has been made recently toward *de novo* generation of hematopoietic stem cells (HSCs) (Szabo *et al*, 2010; Doulatov *et al*, 2013; Pereira *et al*, 2013; Batta *et al*, 2014; Pulecio *et al*, 2014; Riddell *et al*, 2014; Sandler *et al*, 2014). HSCs reside at the apex of the hematopoietic hierarchy and serve as the lifelong reservoir for all downstream blood cells. Their remarkable regenerative capacity to durably restore the entire hematopoietic system in transplant recipients has been harnessed as the standard of care for treatment of a number of

1 Department of Stem Cell and Regenerative Biology, Harvard University, Cambridge, MA, USA
2 Program in Cellular and Molecular Medicine, Division of Hematology/Oncology, Boston Children's Hospital, Boston, MA, USA
3 Department of Pediatrics, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA
4 Harvard Stem Cell Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA
*Corresponding author. Tel: +1 617 713 8900; e-mail: Derrick.Rossi@childrens.harvard.edu

morbid conditions including hematological malignancies, bone marrow failure syndromes, and immunodeficiency syndromes with ~50,000 allogeneic or autologous transplants performed each year (Gratwohl *et al*, 2010). Many factors contribute to transplantation outcomes including relapse of primary disease, graft failure, and opportunistic infection. Moreover, in addition to the challenge of identifying histocompatible donors, allogeneic transplantation is further complicated by graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), which remains a significant cause of morbidity and mortality for a large number of patients who undergo allogeneic transplantation despite the use of prophylactic immunosuppressants (Petersdorf, 2013). Another major factor contributing to transplant success is the number of stem cells transplanted, with an increased number of CD34+ HSPCs being the strongest predictor of transplantation success as measured by rapid and durable hematopoietic recovery (Siena *et al*, 2000). Transplants that contain too few HSCs either fail to engraft altogether or result in delayed blood reconstitution post-transplantation that is associated increased morbidity and mortality. This is particularly clinically challenging for the 10–30% of patients from whom sufficient numbers of autologous stem cells cannot be harvested due to poor responsiveness to mobilizing agents such as GCSF (Bakanay & Demirer, 2012). Therefore, an ability to produce an inexhaustible supply of autologous HSCs from relatively dispensable and potentially expandable cell types via cell fate conversion represents an attractive solution to these challenges. This review will discuss the critical roles played by TFs in hematopoietic cell fate regulation and how this knowledge has propelled efforts to convert alternative cell types toward fully functional HSCs.

Transcriptional regulation of cellular identity

TFs dictate the specific gene expression pattern necessary for a cell to perform its unique functions. Mechanistically, TFs directly impact chromatin state by recruiting epigenetic modifiers to specific DNA sequence motifs present in gene regulatory regions such as promoters and enhancers (Rosenfeld *et al*, 2006). Depending on whether a TF recruits transcriptional coactivators or corepressors, it may either promote or suppress gene expression, respectively. Consequently, a TF may contribute to enforcing a particular cell fate by simultaneously activating genes required for maintaining the function and identity of that cell while antagonizing lineage inappropriate genes (Cantor *et al*, 2008; Pongubala *et al*, 2008; Schaffer *et al*, 2010; Qi *et al*, 2013). In addition to recruiting cofactors, TFs often bind cooperatively to DNA as components of multiprotein complexes (Huang *et al*, 2009; Ravasi *et al*, 2010; Kazemian *et al*, 2013). Thus, the same TF may exhibit completely different genome-wide binding patterns and regulate non-overlapping sets of target genes in different cell types (Hoffman *et al*, 2010; Pimkin *et al*, 2014). Indeed, cell fate and function is invariably the result of the combinatorial action of TF complexes that form interdependent nodes that comprise larger regulatory networks. The wiring of cell-type-specific TFs as self-reinforcing circuits allows robust, stable sustenance of specific transcriptional landscapes (Rao *et al*, 2002; Chew *et al*, 2005; Bonzanni *et al*, 2013). On the other hand, antagonistic relationships between TF sets governing alternate cell fates serve as barriers to cellular plasticity and thus provide a basis for their mutual exclusivity (Graf & Enver, 2009).

TFs exert differential spheres of influence over cell fate depending on their connectivity within gene regulatory networks. Some TFs function as critical hubs, and their loss may lead to the collapse of network integrity (Albert *et al*, 2000). The potency of TFs may also derive from their ability to act as pioneering factors that can directly trigger nucleosomal remodeling to grant chromatin access to additional TFs (Zaret & Carroll, 2011). Some of these factors can be so potent that they can single handedly convert cell fate as is the case for MyoD in establishing the myogenic transcriptome, Cebpa in activating the myeloid program (Xie *et al*, 2004), and Runx1 in coordinating the endothelial-to-hematopoietic transition during development (Feng *et al*, 2008). More often, however, multiple TFs must act in concert to access and activate cell-type-specific gene regulatory networks (Wilson *et al*, 2010a).

Reprogramming and cell fate conversion take advantage of the connectedness and interdependencies of TFs in orchestrating cell fate programs (Buganim *et al*, 2013). Ectopic expression of a subset of TFs enriched in a destination cell type can be sufficient to actuate the destination gene regulatory network in an alternate starting cell type. The destination cell gene regulatory network may then predominate over that of the starting cell type, thus altering its identity. This process depends on extensive chromatin reconfiguration including reversal of chromatin inaccessibility, installation of destination cell specific enhancers, and shutdown of regulatory elements specific to the starting cell type, the carryover of which could lead to retention of what has been termed 'epigenetic memory' (Hu *et al*, 2010; Kim *et al*, 2010; Apostolou & Hochedlinger, 2013; Vaskova *et al*, 2013).

The self-reinforcing nature of gene regulatory networks implies that a small number of TFs may be sufficient to trigger their establishment and maintenance of destination cell regulatory networks. Moreover, recent evidence has demonstrated that regulatory networks governing cell identity could potentially be seeded by multiple distinct combinations of TFs. Indeed, extensive studies of TFs regulating embryonic stem cells have yielded multiple TF combinations capable of iPS cell generation that are different and even completely distinct from that originally reported by Yamanaka (Montserrat *et al*, 2013; Shu *et al*, 2013; Buganim *et al*, 2014; Takashima *et al*, 2014).

Transcriptional regulation of hematopoietic cell fates

The hematopoietic system has been studied extensively as a model tissue hierarchy for dissecting transcriptional regulation of cellular identity and cell fate transitions. As cells descend from HSCs, they are subjected to tiers of decisions that successively commit them to their final effector function. The molecular events underlying developmental cell fate decisions have been attributed in part to cross-antagonism between lineage-specific TFs, perhaps best illustrated by the activities of Gata1 and Pu.1 in promoting erythroid and myeloid differentiation programs, respectively (Arinobu *et al*, 2007). Physical interaction between Gata1 and Pu.1 leads to mutual extinction of transcriptional activity (Nerlov *et al*, 2000; Zhang *et al*, 2000). While they are both expressed in multipotent progenitors, offset in their relative levels, modulated by parameters such as cell cycle length (Kueh *et al*, 2013) and instructive cytokine signaling (Sarrazin *et al*, 2009), allows the higher expressed factor to

dominate cell fate decisions and hence tip the balance toward the respective lineage (Huang *et al*, 2007). Multiple such mutually antagonistic interactions could be assembled to form a greater landscape of attractors and transitional states that models multilineage differentiation (Krumsiek *et al*, 2011).

Pax5 is another TF whose role in hematopoietic lineage commitment has been studied extensively (Urbanek *et al*, 1994). Pax5 is essential in B-cell commitment, the lack of which arrests differentiation at the early pro-B stage (Nutt *et al*, 1999). Mechanistically, Pax5 locks progenitors into B-cell fate by both activating B cell promoting signaling pathways while silencing those important for the development of alternative lineages. Intriguingly, Pax5 null pro-B cells retain not only self-renewal potential but also multilineage differentiation potential spanning myeloid lineages and T cells (Mikkola *et al*, 2002) though Pax5-deficient progenitors do not give rise to B cells (Urbanek *et al*, 1994) and have very limited potential to give rise to erythrocytes or platelets (Nutt *et al*, 1999; Schaniel *et al*, 2002). The importance of Pax5 for limiting self-renewal and locking in B-cell fate is further illustrated by experiments in which deletion in CD19-positive B cells results in an aggressive and highly penetrant lymphoma *in vivo* (Cobaleda *et al*, 2007).

In addition to regulating developmental lineage commitment, TFs may impact subtype specification within hematopoietic lineages. For example, peripheral CD4 T-helper cells can develop into induced regulatory T cells (iTregs) with appropriate immunosuppressive functions upon induction of Foxp3, a TF critical for all regulatory T-cell development (Rudensky, 2011). However, inflammatory signals can extinguish Foxp3 expression in iTregs and convert them back to effector CD4 T-helper cells (Zhou *et al*, 2009). Furthermore, diverse subsets of macrophages are specified by the integration of Pu.1, a macrophage lineage determining TF, with transcriptional regulators downstream of tissue-specific environmental signals (Gosselin *et al*, 2014). These examples suggest that cellular identity can be a composite of multiple transcriptional modules each presided over by unique TFs or their combinations.

Artificial hematopoietic lineage conversions toward therapeutic application

Artificial manipulation of TFs has yielded important insights into the molecular underpinnings of lineage choice (Iwasaki *et al*, 2006). Overexpression together with the loss of function experiments has been used to confirm the nature of interaction between TFs and led to surprising discoveries on cellular plasticity. In addition to obtaining valuable mechanistic information, excitement in cell fate conversion research has been fueled by its enormous clinical potential. Cell fate conversion has the potential to generate patient-specific cells that are rare, inaccessible, or clinically useful from relatively dispensable autologous cells. If realized, such procedures could be applied to supplying cells for human disease modeling, therapeutic screening, and cell replacement therapy (Robinton & Daley, 2012; Cherry & Daley, 2013; Kamao *et al*, 2014; Nakamura *et al*, 2014; Stewart, 2014; Wainger *et al*, 2014). Thus, this strategy represents an attractive means to address both patient specificity and overcoming the rarity, and lack of means for expansion that currently limits the therapeutic use of HSCs.

A parallel strategy toward generating HSCs has been via stepwise differentiation of pluripotent stem cells such as embryonic stem cells or induced pluripotent stem cells (Sturgeon *et al*, 2013). However, attempts to direct differentiation of pluripotent stem cells toward HSCs by recapitulating the embryonic developmental trajectory *in vitro* has seen limited success. Simulating the temporal (Tober *et al*, 2013), spatial (Peeters *et al*, 2009; Wilkinson *et al*, 2009), mechanical (North *et al*, 2009), and cellular (Clements *et al*, 2011; Espin-Palazon *et al*, 2014) complexity of the embryonic milieu has proved technically challenging. Moreover, since the precise developmental intermediates en route to HSCs are only recently becoming elucidated (Rybtsov *et al*, 2011, 2014), the directed differentiation approach has thus far suffered from paucity of reliable developmental guideposts. For example, induction of T lymphoid potential has been used to guide directed differentiation as it correlates with definitive hematopoiesis, a temporal wave of embryonic hematopoiesis during which HSCs are specified (Kennedy *et al*, 2012). However, it is still unknown whether the *in vitro* derivatives with T lymphoid potential indeed possess the eventual capacity to produce HSCs or whether they might represent a developmental intermediate similar to embryonic T-cell progenitors that arise independently of HSCs (Yoshimoto *et al*, 2012). Due to such state of the field, little is known about the functional and molecular correlation between the developmental intermediates obtained *in vitro* and *in vivo*, and the knowledge is particularly lacking in the context of human HSC ontogeny (Ivanovs *et al*, 2014). Furthermore, the necessity to transit through multiple distinct intermediate cell types to reach HSCs means that culture conditions may need to be optimized for every intermediate and that deviation in any one step may extinguish the eventual potential to develop HSCs. Therefore, in spite of 'forceful' nature of TF manipulations, TF-mediated cell fate conversion may be a relatively simpler, direct, and even more tractable of a strategy for deriving HSCs as it only requires knowledge of the properties of the destination cell type.

Generation of hematopoietic stem cells via direct cell fate conversion

HSCs are functionally defined as cells capable of engrafting conditioned recipients and giving rise to all blood lineages (i.e., myeloid, thrombo-erythroid, and lymphoid), for an extended period (at least 4 months in mice). These functional hallmarks of HSCs, namely multilineage differentiation potential and extensive self-renewal capacity, are embodied at the clonal level such that only few HSCs are required to durably sustain the entire hematopoietic system (Holstege *et al*, 2014). Although fully functional human HSCs meeting the aforementioned criteria have yet to be produced *in vitro*, several strategies have recently been described that bring the goal of deriving fully function HSCs from alternative cell types within reach (Table 1).

Szabo *et al* (2010) and Pulecio *et al* (2014) converted human fibroblasts to hematopoietic cells possessing multilineage myeloid potential aided by pluripotency-associated TFs, namely OCT4 and SOX2, respectively. The latter study also showed improved hematopoietic conversion with the addition of mir125b, a microRNA enriched in human hematopoietic progenitors. Since transient expression of pluripotency factors or OCT4 is sufficient to confer

Table 1. Summary of studies using transcription factor-mediated reprogramming to derive primitive blood progenitors.

	Szabo *et al* (2010)	**Pulecio *et al* (2014)**	**Pereira *et al* (2013)**	**Batta *et al* (2014)**	**Doulatov *et al* (2013)**	**Riddell *et al* (2014)**	**Sandler *et al* (2014)**
Species	Human	Human	Mouse	Mouse	Human	Mouse	Human
Starting cell type	Fibroblast	Fibroblast	Fibroblast	Fibroblast	ES cell-derived myeloid restricted progenitor	B-cell progenitor, myeloid progenitor, bone marrow myeloid effector	Umbilical vein endothelial cells, microvascular endothelial cells
Transcription factors	OCT4	SOX2, mir125b	Gata2, Gfi1b, cFos, Etv6	Erg, Gata2, Runx1c, Scl, Lmo2	ERG, HOXA9, RORA, SOX4, MYB	Runx1t1, Hlf, Lmo2, Pbx1, Zfp37, Prdm5, Mycn, Meis1	FOSB, GFI1, RUNX1, SPI1
Factor inducibility	Constitutive	Constitutive	Inducible	Constitutive	Inducible	Inducible	Constitutive
Medium	*In vitro*	*In vitro*	*In vitro*	*In vitro*	*In vitro*	*In vivo*	*In vitro* with endothelial stroma
In vitro colony formation	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
Erythroid	+	+	Not shown	+	+	+	+
Myeloid	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
B	–	–	–	–[a]	–	+	+
T	–	–	–	–[a]	+[b]	+	+[c]
Engraftment	+[d]	+[d]	–	+[e]	+	+	+
Serial Transplantation	–	–	–	–	–	+	+
HSC?	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	No[f]

[a]Lymphoid differentiation potential acquired with p53 deletion.
[b]Although modest T-cell differentiation potential was confirmed *in vitro*, no T cells were detected *in vivo*.
[c]Minimal *in vitro* T-cell differentiation possible when TFs are expressed using inducible system.
[d]Engrafted cells express low levels of CD45, a pan-lympho-myeloid hematopoietic marker.
[e]Very short-term (2 week), primarily erythroid engraftment.
[f]*In vivo* function not assayed with cells derived using inducible system.

tri-germ layer differentiation potential on fibroblasts, fate conversion specifically to the blood lineage with OCT4 or SOX2 was likely mediated by the inductive effects of hematopoietic cytokines (Mitchell *et al*, 2014), which has previously been shown to be able to reprogram blood cell identity (Kondo *et al*, 2000). Although the resulting cells were able to engraft *in vivo*, the majority of them expressed low levels of the pan-hematopoietic antigen, CD45, and did not peripheralize, possibly suggesting incomplete hematopoietic conversion.

Instead of transitioning through a developmentally plastic state, a more direct, autonomous fate transition could be achieved by overexpressing lineage-specifying TFs enriched in destination cells. Toward this, Pereira *et al* (2013) screened 18 candidate TFs enriched in quiescent mouse HSCs that could activate exogenous human CD34 promoter inserted into mouse fibroblasts. The screen identified transient expression of Gata2, Gfi1b, cFos, and Etv6 to be sufficient for generating hematopoietic cells from fibroblasts via an intermediate cell type that coexpressed both endothelial and hematopoietic markers. Although the converted hematopoietic cells were similar to mouse hematopoietic stem/progenitor cells with respect to gene expression, they were devoid of *in vitro* clonogenic potential unless cocultured with placental stroma, suggesting that maturation into progenitor-like blood cells required additional signals. Clonal multilineage potential or *in vivo* functionality was not assayed. A similar fate conversion strategy from fibroblasts was employed by Batta *et al* (2014) who screened a curated set of 19 hematopoietic TFs for morphological change of murine fibroblasts to round hematopoietic cells. Five TFs, Erg, Gata2, Lmo2, Runx1c, and Scl, were found to robustly induce hematopoietic colonies from both embryonic and adult fibroblasts, and the reprogrammed cells were shown to possess erythroid, megakaryocytic, granulocytic, and macrophage differentiation potentials. Similar to Pereira *et al*, Batta *et al* also observed that fibroblasts converted to hematopoietic cells via an endothelial intermediate. *In vitro* clonogenic assays confirmed the presence of cells possessing multilineage potential; upon transplantation, however, these cells only gave rise to very short-term (2 weeks) erythroid chimerism. Interestingly, p53 nullizygosity not only enhanced the efficiency of reprogramming but also increased erythroid differentiation potential in addition to permitting production of receptor rearranged B and T lineage cells.

Although iPS cells have the developmental potential to be differentiated toward potentially transplantable autologous tissues, their hematopoietic differentiation has yielded progenitors with greatly restricted self-renewal and differentiation potentials quite unlike those of true HSCs. Doulatov *et al* (2013) sought to respecify iPS cell-derived myeloid restricted progenitors toward HSCs using TFs enriched in both human and mouse HSCs that appeared underexpressed in the blood progenitors cells derived from pluripotent cells.

Screening nine candidate TFs and using serial plating as a readout, ectopic expressions of ERG, HOXA9, and RORA were found to instill robust *in vitro* clonogenic potential but not multilineage potential or engraftment capacity. However, additional ectopic expression of SOX4 and MYB enabled the acquisition of myelo-erythroid differentiation potential as well as short-term myeloid engraftment capacity in immunocompromised mice. Although modest T lineage potential was confirmed *in vitro*, the grafts failed to produce lymphoid lineage *in vivo*. Long-term engraftment was not achieved.

As opposed to respecifying embryonic-like hematopoietic cells derived from pluripotent stem cells, Riddell *et al* (2014) undertook reprogramming of primary adult lineage committed murine hematopoietic progenitors and effectors using gene regulatory factors exhibiting restricted expression in mouse HSCs relative to the majority of their differentiated progeny. An unbiased screen of 36 factors, which included 33 TFs and three translational regulators, was performed in the transplantation setting to take advantage of the sensitivity of the assay in reading out HSC activity at the single-cell level, and potentially co-opt signals present in the *in vivo* environment that might facilitate cell conversion. The screen identified six genes *Hlf, Runx1t1, Pbx1, Lmo2, Prdm5*, and *Zfp37* whose transient ectopic expression was sufficient for instilling multilineage reconstituting potential on otherwise lineage committed hematopoietic cells. Inclusion of Meis1 and Mycn was found to improve reprogramming efficiency. Long-term multilineage reconstitution, serial transplantability, reconstitution of bone marrow progenitor compartments and secondary hematopoietic organs, and single-cell gene expression profiling confirmed that the reprogrammed cells possessed the functional and molecular properties of endogenous HSCs and thus were termed 'induced HSCs' (iHSCs).

HSCs and endothelial cells share an intimate ontological relationship as HSCs are specified from hemogenic endothelial-like intermediates during embryogenesis via endothelial-to-hematopoietic transition (EHT). Sandler *et al* hypothesized that EHT may be recapitulated in mature, non-hemogenic endothelial cells by ectopic expression of key TFs and provision of an inductive environment (Zovein *et al*, 2008; Bertrand *et al*, 2010; Boisset *et al*, 2010; Gordon-Keylock & Medvinsky, 2011; Sandler *et al*, 2014). Screening 25 TFs expressed at a higher level in human cord blood HSPCs relative to human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVECs) identified the minimal set of FOSB, GFI1, RUNX1, and SPI1 to be sufficient and necessary for robustly generating hematopoietic colonies from HUVECs and human adult dermal microvascular endothelial cells. The reprogramming was found to strictly depend on an endothelial stroma previously developed by the authors' group for maintaining human cord blood HSPCs (Butler *et al*, 2012). The reprogrammed cells possessed both *in vitro* and *in vivo* multilineage differentiation potential, long-term reconstitution potential, *in vivo* homing/engraftment capacity, and serial transplantability, only with the caveat of defective T-cell differentiation potential, thus earning the label of multipotent progenitors (MPPs).

Despite sharing the same destination identity, the studies summarized above show striking diversity with respect to experimental design and the TF combinations identified (Fig 1). However, in totality, the reported TFs are highly enriched for both developmental genes involved in embryonic specification of hematopoiesis and those implicated in leukemogenesis. Classical developmental hematopoiesis genes such as *Scl, Gata2, Gfi1, Runx1, and Spi1 (Pu.1)* (Wilson *et al*, 2010b) appear to be important in fate conversions that involve lineage switching, such as from fibroblasts or endothelial cells, whereas they do not appear to be important in reprogramming or respecification within the blood lineage. This could reflect that even post-embryogenesis, the same small set of TFs that specified hematopoiesis earlier in life can pioneer the establishment of hematopoietic program in non-hematopoietic adult cell types, though such activity may be redundant in conversions within hematopoietic lineage. The requirement for TFs such as HOXA9, MYB, Lmo2, Pbx1, Mycn, and Meis1 in reprogramming of committed blood cells is consistent with their classical roles in tumor development (Thorsteinsdottir *et al*, 2001; Kawagoe *et al*, 2007; Jin *et al*, 2010; McCormack *et al*, 2010). In particular, components of Hox effectors, namely *HOXA9*, *Pbx1*, and *Meis1*, are found in TF sets reported by both Doulatov *et al* and Riddell *et al*. This particular set of TFs has been shown to function as a heterotrimeric complex (Shen *et al*, 1997) and is frequently represented in regenerative processes (Mercader *et al*, 2005; Capellini *et al*, 2006; Chen *et al*, 2013; Roensch *et al*, 2013) and across multiple types of cancers (Morgan *et al*, 2007; Shears *et al*, 2008; Plowright *et al*, 2009; Sun *et al*, 2013), suggesting that it may regulate generic properties of stem/progenitors such as self-renewal, anti-apoptosis, and differentiation arrest. In spite of the apparently central role played by the Hox complex in regulating stemness, it is intriguing that ectopic stimulation of this pathway was not required to generate progenitor cells as highly functional as the MPPs directly from endothelial cells (Sandler *et al*, 2014). However, this could be explained by the fact that endothelial cells exhibit intrinsic HoxA cluster activity, which is integral to vascular development and function (Rössig *et al*, 2005; Bandyopadhyay *et al*, 2012).

Species-specific differences may also contribute to the identification of distinct HSPC–inducing TF combinations. It is possible, though not rigorously studied, that divergent gene regulatory networks may govern mouse and human HSCs. For example, although constitutive ectopic expression of Hoxb4 allows the generation of engraftable mouse HSPCs from mouse embryonic stem cells (Wang *et al*, 2005b; Matsumoto *et al*, 2009), the same robust effect was not seen using human cells (Wang *et al*, 2005a). In the erythroid lineage, noticeable transcriptional divergence was found between mouse and human cells isolated from comparative stages of differentiation (Pishesha *et al*, 2014). Furthermore, overexpression of a dominant-negative isoform of IKAROS (IKZF1) was recently found to impart diametric effects on mouse and human HSPCs (Beer *et al*, 2014). Whereas IKZF1 overexpression in mouse HSPCs suppressed B but enhanced T lineage outputs, the same manipulation in human cord blood HSPCs significantly increased B lineage cell production without affecting T lineage. Therefore, although the majority of TFs discovered in the studies using murine cells (Pereira *et al*, 2013; Riddell *et al*, 2014) are highly homologous between mouse and human, it is uncertain whether the same set of factors capable of inducing mouse HSPCs would also be sufficient for inducing human HSCs.

Another major variable among the studies is the system used for ectopic expression of TFs. An important criterion for complete cell fate conversion is transgene-independent sustenance of destination cell gene regulatory networks. Although transduction with viruses encoding TFs under constitutive promoters may become passively silenced over time, the use of an inducible transgene

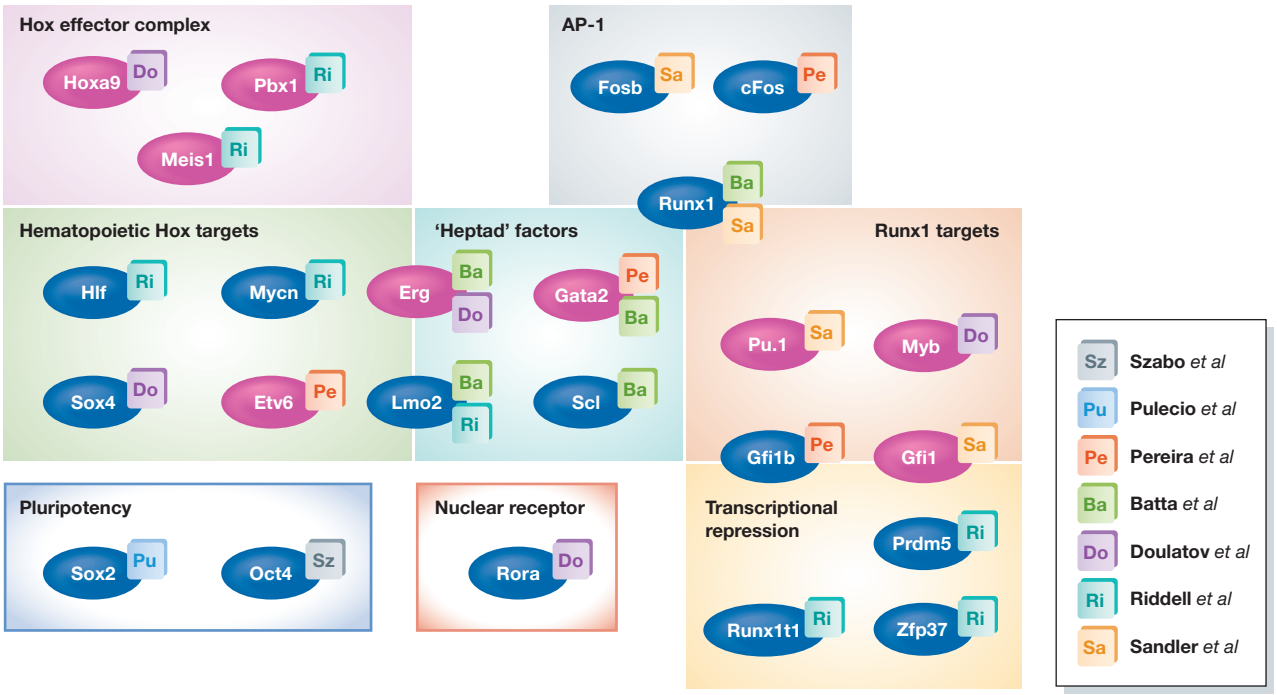


Figure 1. Categorization of transcription factors employed toward *de novo* HSC generation.
TFs employed by Szabo *et al* (Sz), Pulecio *et al* (Pu), Pereira *et al* (Pe), Batta *et al* (Ba), Doulatov *et al* (Do), Riddell *et al* (Ri), and Sandler *et al* (Sa) are classified into categories based on previously described activities. 'Heptad' factors refer to classical hematopoietic TFs known for their physical interactions (Wilson *et al*, 2010a). Individual loss of function of TFs highlighted in pink has been shown to impair HSC activity.

system (i.e., doxycycline inducible) can give better temporal control over TF expression as well as ensure that the ectopic genes are turned off upon completion of cell fate conversion. Importantly, continued ectopic expression of TFs involved in 'respecification/reprogramming' may also interfere with the function of the destination cells. For example, continued ectopic expression of SPI1 in endothelial cell-derived multipotent progenitors (MPPs) was shown to block T-cell differentiation potential (Sandler *et al*, 2014). In the same study, as only MPPs obtained using constitutive expression vectors were assayed *in vivo*, it remains to be shown definitively whether the MPPs can stably maintain their identity independent of residual transgene expression.

Since environmental responsiveness and developmental plasticity represent cardinal properties of HSCs, it is conceivable that environmental cues may strongly influence cell fate conversion toward HSCs. Reasoning that reprogramming in the context of the native HSC niche (Morrison & Scadden, 2014) may facilitate the acquisition of HSC identity, Riddell *et al* (2014) conducted reprogramming experiments *in vivo*. Similarly, Sandler *et al* took advantage of an endothelial stromal coculture system developed for *ex vivo* maintenance of human HSCs to provide an inductive environment for *de novo* HSC generation (Butler *et al*, 2012; Sandler *et al*, 2014). Intriguingly, both of these studies gave rise to serially transplantable cells possessing lympho-myeloid multilineage potential, a feat unattained by any of the other cell fate conversion strategies, which were all conducted in the absence of HSC supportive milieu. Although Riddell *et al* did not show the absolute requirement of the *in vivo* environment for HSC induction, an HSC supportive environment was shown to be a necessity in the conversion of endothelial cells to MPPs by Sandler *et al* Insights from other cell fate conversion systems also point to the importance of the environment. In particular, STAT3, a transcription factor directly activated by growth factor signaling, has been shown to play an central role in embryonic stem cells as well as in induction of pluripotency (Niwa *et al*, 1998; Raz *et al*, 1999; Yang *et al*, 2010; van Oosten *et al*, 2012), thus emphasizing that cell extrinsic cues can be as important as the intrinsic ones.

Toward understanding the transcriptional regulation of HSC identity

In spite of enormous progress, the era of HSC induction has only dawned. With little consensus on the optimal combination of TFs and/or environmental cues for inducing HSCs, it may be necessary to perform comparative studies or even 'mix and match' findings from hitherto studies for even better results. With respect to reevaluating TF combinations for human HSC induction, it may be worth noting the heterogeneity of primary human HSCs. Although immunophenotypically defined single human HSC has been successfully isolated (Notta *et al*, 2011), a number of studies show that the human HSC compartment can still be fractionated into subpopulations with distinct functional potentials (Anjos-Afonso *et al*, 2013; Chitteti *et al*, 2014) similar to the HSC subfractionation that has been demonstrated in the mouse (Dykstra *et al*, 2007; Beerman *et al*, 2010; Morita *et al*, 2010; Babovic & Eaves, 2014). Therefore,

TFs enriched in each of these subpopulations may differentially impact HSC induction.

Understanding the function of individual TFs in HSCs constitutes an important step toward elucidating the mechanism of HSC induction. Consistent with the ability to access the HSC gene regulatory program, many of the TFs identified by the studies highlighted in this review have been previously implicated in HSC and progenitor biology. Individual loss of function of *Hoxa9* (Lawrence *et al*, 2005), *Gata2* (Lim *et al*, 2012), *Pbx1* (Ficara *et al*, 2008), *Meis1* (Unnisa *et al*, 2012), *Gfi1* (Hock *et al*, 2004; Zeng *et al*, 2004), *Etv6* (Wang *et al*, 1998), *SPI1* (Pu.1) (Staber *et al*, 2013), *Myb* (Lieu & Reddy, 2009), or *Erg* (Ng *et al*, 2011) in HSCs has each been shown to compromise their homeostatic maintenance and/or competitive repopulation potential. Although direct loss of function of *Lmo2* in HSCs has not been conducted, its critical role in hematopoiesis is underscored by the inability of *Lmo2* null ES cells to contribute to postnatal hematopoiesis in chimeric blastocysts (Yamada *et al*, 1998). Similarly, *Runx1* null ES cells cannot contribute to adult hematopoiesis (Okuda *et al*, 1996) due to impairment of EHT (Chen *et al*, 2009). Intriguingly, however, conditional loss of *Runx1* in the adult hematopoietic system only impairs megakaryocytic and lymphoid differentiation with minimal impact on HSC activity (Ichikawa *et al*, 2004; Cai *et al*, 2011). Although the consequence of loss of function of *Sox4, Rora, Runx1t1, Zfp37, Prdm5*, or *Hlf* in HSCs has yet to be reported, overexpression and leukemia studies have implicated some of these factors in HSC function. For example, *Sox4* has been implicated in self-renewal of leukemic cells (Zhang *et al*, 2013) and ectopic expression of *Hlf*, a leukemia-associated TF (Hunger *et al*, 1992), has been shown to enhance repopulation potential of human HSCs (Shojaei *et al*, 2005) and allows maintenance of *in vitro* multilineage differentiation potential and serial plating capacity of murine HSCs and progenitors (Gazit *et al*, 2013). Also of note, many of these understudied factors, namely *Runx1t1* (Lindberg *et al*, 2003), *Zfp37* (Dreyer *et al*, 1998), and *Prdm5* (Duan *et al*, 2007), identified by Riddell *et al* (Riddell *et al*, 2014) function as transcriptional repressors, suggesting that active repression of differentiation-associated genes may be an important component of reprogramming differentiated blood cells back to HSCs. Finally, loss of function of some TFs may not result in HSC defects due to functional redundancies with other TFs. For example, *Mycn* deletion in HSCs is compensated by the presence of *c-Myc* (Laurenti *et al*, 2008). However, combined deletion of *Mycn* and *c-Myc* demonstrated the requirement of the Myc genes in the exit from stem cell state as well as preventing apoptosis of HSCs. Similarly, *Scl* nullizygosity has no effect on HSCs due to its functional redundancy with *Lyl1*, but their combined ablation leads to loss of HSCs via apoptosis (Souroullas *et al*, 2009).

Detailing the interactions between the TFs used in HSC induction may provide deeper insights into the gene regulatory network governing HSC identity, which could lend to discoveries of more efficient or alternative TF combinations for inducing HSCs. Many of the reported TFs have already been shown to interact physically and/or at the transcriptional level. As mentioned previously, Hoxa9, Meis1, and Pbx1 directly interact to coregulate transcription (Shen *et al*, 1997), although they may also function independently as their individual deletions result in differential HSC phenotypes (Lawrence *et al*, 2005; Ficara *et al*, 2008; Unnisa *et al*, 2012). The Hox complex cannot only autoregulate Hox gene expression (Trivedi *et al*, 2008; Horman *et al*, 2009) but also enhance the expression of a number of other reprogramming TFs such as Erg, Myb, Sox4, Lmo2, Etv6, Mycn, and Hlf in blood cells (Palmqvist *et al*, 2007; Nagel *et al*, 2011; Huang *et al*, 2012) although there also appears to be redundancies among these targets such as the cross-regulation between Lmo2 and Erg (Oram *et al*, 2010) and induction of *Lmo2* by Hlf (de Boer *et al*, 2011). However, the diverse and wide-ranging targets of the Hox complex combined with the fact that it regulates distinct processes in non-hematopoietic tissues (i.e., body segmentation, blastema formation, and non-hematopoietic cancers, mentioned previously) suggests that the complex may require interaction with lineage-restricted TFs to exert tissue-specific functions. In support of this, Hoxa9/Meis1 has been shown to specifically bind and activate myeloid enhancers in cooperation with hematopoietic TFs such as SPI1(Pu.1), and Runx1 (Huang *et al*, 2012). This model implies that HSC specification by the Hox complex requires either *a priori* patterning of relevant enhancers or coexpression of hematopoietic-specific TFs that can pioneer enhancer establishment. Following this logic, under certain circumstances, overexpression of the Hox complex may impede cell fate conversion by promoting maintenance of enhancers specific to the starting cell type, akin to the antagonism of EHT by Hoxa3 during embryogenesis (Iacovino *et al*, 2011).

Extensive interactions have also been reported between TFs classically associated with hematopoiesis such as Scl, Runx1, Gata2, Gfi1, and SPI1(Pu.1) that appear in the reprogramming TF cocktails. For example, a heptad of TFs regulating HSPCs, SCL, LYL1, LMO2, GATA2, RUNX1, ERG, and FLI1 have been shown to directly bind each other and cooperatively regulate hematopoietic genes (Wilson *et al*, 2010a) as well as autoregulate their own expression (Grass *et al*, 2003; Pimanda *et al*, 2007; Diffner *et al*, 2013). While the majority of these TFs is implicated in both hematopoietic and endothelial development (De Val & Black, 2009), Runx1 has received much attention for its specific and critical role in embryonic HSC specification (North *et al*, 2002). During mid-gestation, Runx1 specifies HSCs by acting as a pioneering TF that initiates expression of hematopoietic genes such as SPI1(Pu.1) in an endothelial-like cell (Huang *et al*, 2008; Chen *et al*, 2009; Lichtinger *et al*, 2012; Tanaka *et al*, 2012). The activity of Runx1 is modulated not only by its obligate binding partner Cbfb and other members of the heptad TFs but also by the AP1 complex, whose motifs are highly enriched at genomic Runx1 binding peaks (Pencovich *et al*, 2011; Lie *et al*, 2014). AP1 complex has been shown to physically interact with Runx1 (Hess *et al*, 2001; D'Alonzo *et al*, 2002) and is itself a heterodimer of JUN and FOS family proteins, the latter of which were found to be necessary to induce hematopoiesis from non-hematopoietic cells in the studies by Pereira *et al* (2013) and Sandler *et al* (2014). The same studies also identified Gfi1/Gfi1b and SPI1 (Pu.1), direct targets of Runx1 that promote the loss of endothelial identity associated with EHT (Lancrin *et al*, 2012; Pereira *et al*, 2013; Sandler *et al*, 2014; Wilkinson *et al*, 2014). Interestingly, Gfi1 has been shown to directly repress Hoxa9, Pbx1, and Meis1 (Horman *et al*, 2009), which could support the aforementioned notion that suppression of Hox complex may be important to facilitate lineage switching toward blood. Ultimately, the kinetics and expression levels of TFs may need to be regulated for optimal HSC induction.

TFs mediate cell fate conversion by rewriting epigenetic information, which has been shown to be facilitated by directly modulating nuclear enzymes responsible for chromatin modifications. A number of small molecules that increase chromatin accessibility have been shown to enhance the efficiency of iPSC generation (Federation *et al*, 2014). One study even demonstrated that a G9a histone methyltransferase inhibitor was able to replace Oct4 in inducing pluripotency from mouse fetal neural progenitors (Shi *et al*, 2008). Although the mechanisms governing induction of pluripotency or HSCs may differ, barriers to accessing the HSC program may be similarly lowered by the use of such small molecules. Epigenetics has also been shown to underlie functional heterogeneity within the HSC compartment, especially with respect to aging-induced increase in self-renewal and myeloid lineage bias (Beerman *et al*, 2013; Sun *et al*, 2014a). Although reprogramming to pluripotency has been demonstrated to be sufficient in reversing epigenetic components of HSC aging (Wahlestedt *et al*, 2013), other studies have shown functional and molecular heterogeneity of iPSCs that originate from retention of epigenetic information associated with the starting cell type (Hu *et al*, 2010; Kim *et al*, 2010; Vaskova *et al*, 2013). Therefore, an intriguing question would be to determine whether the starting cell age is reset upon direct cell fate conversion to HSCs and whether HSCs induced from committed blood cell lineages exhibit differentiation bias toward the respective lineages. This latter point was not however evident in iHSCs generated in the Riddell *et al* (2014) study as iHSCs derived from either B-cell progenitors or myeloid progenitor or effector cells appeared comparable in their capacity to give rise to lymphoid and myeloid effector cells *in vivo*.

Complementary to overexpressing HSC-specific TFs, direct extinction of gene regulatory networks governing starting cell types may further augment cell fate transition. Since deletion of Pax5 has already been shown to be sufficient for liberation from B lineage fate (Nutt *et al*, 1999), such manipulation may enhance HSC induction from B-cell progenitors. The use of RUNX1 and GFI1 by Sandler *et al* in inducing hematopoiesis from endothelial cells indeed follows the logic of their developmental role in extinguishing the endothelial program (Iacovino *et al*, 2011; Lancrin *et al*, 2012).

Toward human HSCs

Given the rapid progress in the field, derivation of the first human HSCs via cell fate conversion appears increasingly attainable. The diverse strategies presented thus far provide lessons that may help refine the approach to generating human HSCs as well as gain deeper insights into the mechanism of HSC induction.

Though already mentioned earlier, the importance of using inducible expression vectors should be reemphasized. Inducibility is critical to ensure transient ectopic expression of TFs in order to demonstrate that resulting HSCs possess self-sustaining and stable identity. Another advantage of this system is the re-inducibility of the TFs, which can be exploited for secondary reprogramming experiments (Wernig *et al*, 2008; Riddell *et al*, 2014).

To accelerate the study of HSC induction, it would be critical to perform experiments in defined media. Although the endothelial stromal system used by Sandler *et al* appears to provide a powerful inductive milieu, it remains to be seen whether it is generally applicable. Nonetheless, it is also possible that a special environment may not be necessary for certain starting cell types and/or TF combinations. In either case, with an ability to perform the entirety of cell fate conversion *in vitro*, it should be possible to gain finer control over experimental parameters as well as to obtain kinetic information on the induction of HSC identity.

The crux of HSC induction is the functional evaluation of test cells. Rigorous assays should be employed to confirm the *in vivo* potential of induced HSCs to self-renew and generate multilineage progeny at the clonal level. Long-term reconstitution and serial transplantation are commonly employed to assess the *in vivo* self-renewal potential of HSCs. These assays also indirectly provide indications on the ability of test cells to properly home to and engraft in the niches. *In vivo* functionality of HSCs is contingent upon their successful engraftment. To arrive at bone marrow niches, HSCs must home to the correct vasculature, extravasate, and then migrate to gain contact with the niche components (Lapidot *et al*, 2005). The surface molecules and signal transduction components necessary for orchestrating this process are thus integral to HSC function. Although it is possible that this facet of HSC identity is within the domains governed by HSC-specific TFs, it could represent a generic functional module shared with other bone marrow resident cell types. In the latter scenario, orthogonally acting TFs or specific environmental signals may be required in addition to ectopic expression of HSC-enriched TFs to induce engraftable HSCs. For instance, it has been shown that expression of Cxcr4, an essential chemokine receptor for HSC migration, is regulated by Hif1a, suggesting that Cxcr4 induction may dependent on hypoxia rather than HSC-specific TFs (Speth *et al*, 2014).

The prerequisite for homing and engraftment complicates functional assessment of human HSCs in the setting of xenotransplantation experiments. To circumvent graft rejection, immunodeficient mice that lack B, T, and NK cells are used as hosts for human HSCs (Shultz *et al*, 2012). Even then, the engraftment potential of human HSC in murine hosts is inferior to that of mouse HSCs, likely due to cross-species differences between cytokines and signaling/homing receptors or even due to the incompatibility of human CD47, a 'don't eat me' signal, with host phagocytes (Jaiswal *et al*, 2009; Kwong *et al*, 2014). To obtain robust chimerism, human HSCs may need to be injected directly into the bone marrow cavity via intrafemoral injection, thus bypassing the complex orchestration of cellular maneuvers leading to engraftment. The caveat, however, is that lowering the hurdle to engraftment or differences in transplantation procedures may result in incongruous definitions for human HSCs. Although intrafemoral injection of induced HSCs could be justified if one were to claim the necessity of the *in vivo* environment in inducing proper homing/engraftment capacity, this needs to be confirmed with secondary transplantation via intravenous route of injection. The difference in the rigor of *in vivo* assays used to define HSCs as well as cross-species mismatches in signaling may also underlie molecular differences between mouse and human HSCs, and it is unknown whether experimentally derived cells tested in xenograft models will ultimately function effectively in human patients. An important step, therefore, is to develop better models for native engraftment of human HSCs, such as better humanized mice or reconstituted human bone marrow, so that their functional definition could be refined (Drake *et al*, 2012; Scotti *et al*, 2013; Cosgun *et al*, 2014; Torisawa *et al*, 2014).

The question of *in vivo* clonal multilineage differentiation potential, though challenging, can potentially be addressed using two molecular approaches. First, if HSCs can be induced from B or T lineage cells that have undergone receptor rearrangement, it would be possible to use the unique sequences of the recombined loci as a bar code to track the clonal progenitor cell origin of effector cell progeny as was done by Riddell *et al* (2014). Receptor rearrangement also provides direct evidence for the cell of origin of the reprogrammed cells, an important consideration given that even a single contaminating HSC inadvertently introduced during transplantation experiments has the potential to confound interpretations. The second approach is viral integration analysis that takes advantage of viral insertion sites that can serve as cellular barcodes. Finally, single-cell transplantation experiments can be used to assure clonal multilineage potential *in vivo*—though this is a very high bar to surmount, especially if cell fate conversion efficacy is low.

Toward clinical translation

Despite the progress, a number of challenges must be met before *de novo* generated human HSCs can reach clinical translation (Fig 2). Despite the diversity of TF combinations hitherto used for hematopoietic induction, a commonality among most of them is their proto-oncogenicity. Although no tumors have thus far been reported by hematopoietic cell fate conversion studies, the potential dangers of these potent TFs combined with the risks of insertional mutagenesis by lentiviral vectors cannot be tolerated for use in generating clinical-grade human HSCs. Therefore, the current lentiviral methods for HSC induction may be most applicable for such uses as disease modeling.

Given the risks associated with lentiviral transduction, non-integrating approaches will need to be considered toward clinical translation. A number of such methods developed for generating integration-free iPSCs including protein transduction, non-integrating viruses, and mRNA based transient protein expression systems could potentially be applied to HSC induction (Fusaki *et al*, 2009; Warren *et al*, 2010; Zhang *et al*, 2012; Mandal & Rossi, 2013; Yoshioka *et al*, 2013; Elcheva *et al*, 2014). However, as the non-integrating approaches are highly variable with respect to the duration of ectopic factor expression, the kinetics of respecification/reprogramming will need to be investigated in parallel to optimize the generation of integration-free HSCs. Furthermore, the level of TF induction may also need to be controlled since the stoichiometry of TFs may impact reprogramming efficiency as well as the functionality of reprogrammed cells as has been reported in other systems (Carey *et al*, 2011).

In addition to guaranteeing safety, it will be necessary to increase the efficiency of HSC induction to obtain sufficient numbers for transplantation. Although the efficiency of generating iPSCs has increased dramatically, their utility is augmented by their limitless self-renewal potential and well-defined culture conditions that support it. Since it is unclear whether HSCs could ever be expanded to the same extent as iPSCs while avoiding functional decline as seen with aging (Rossi *et al*, 2005; Beerman *et al*, 2013; Beerman & Rossi, 2014; Sun *et al*, 2014a), an ideal solution would entail near deterministic induction of HSCs from readily available somatic cells such as peripheral blood or fibroblasts. Until such efficiency can be reached, robust, defined means for *ex vivo* HSC expansion should be pursued.

Finally, the assays used to confirm HSC identity should be reevaluated. Currently, the only reliable, accepted method for assessing HSC function is competitive transplantation, a resource and time draining procedure incompatible with routine quality control of patient-derived HSCs. Therefore, a bioinformatic metric, like those developed for iPSC quality control (Nestor & Noggle, 2013), predictive of HSC functionality will not only benefit clinical translation but also accelerate the pace of HSC induction research.

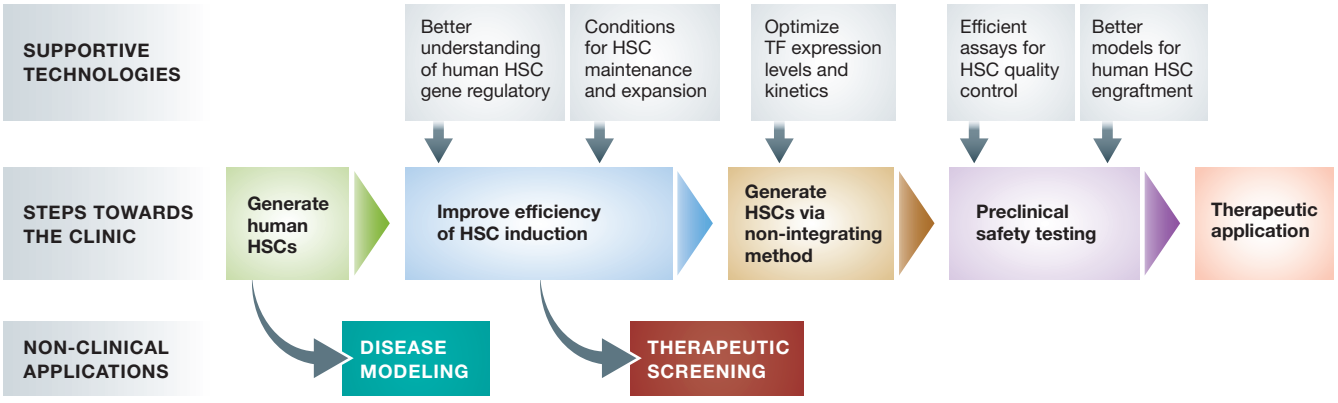


Figure 2. Road map to clinical translation of human induced HSCs.
Upon establishment of a method for generating human HSCs from patient-derived cells, a number of critical steps must be taken *en route* to clinical translation. Although the initial, suboptimal method may be sufficient for initiating patient-specific disease modeling research, substantial improvements in the efficiency of HSC generation must be made to obtain sufficient numbers of HSCs toward therapeutic screening and for use in reconstituting adult patients. Prior to preclinical testing, a non-integrating approach to generating HSCs must be established in order to eliminate the risks associated with insertional mutagenesis and accidental re-induction of reprogramming TFs, many of which are potently oncogenic. During the preclinical phase, quality control and safety testing should be performed at molecular and functional levels. Functional testing should involve the best methods for modeling human HSC engraftment such as humanized immunodeficient animal recipients.

Conclusion

"*What I cannot create, I do not understand.*"
Richard Feynman

HSCs have captivated generations of researchers not only because of their clinical importance but also for their intriguing yet elusive biological properties. Arguably, a major contributor to this allure has been the challenges associated with the seemingly simple task of obtaining more HSCs. Even while the biology of HSCs continues to be elucidated in staggering resolution with the advent of increasingly sensitive and high throughput methods (Lu *et al*, 2011; Gazit *et al*, 2013; Cabezas-Wallscheid *et al*, 2014; Lara-Astiaso *et al*, 2014; Sun *et al*, 2014a,b; Wu *et al*, 2014) as well as more accurate description of the HSC niche (Morrison & Scadden, 2014), robust *ex vivo* expansion or *de novo* generation of human HSCs still remains elusive. However, major strides made by the recent cohort of fate conversion studies have introduced new hope and perspectives to a field historically reigned by attempts to mimic the natural processes that regulate and specify HSCs. Despite having to induce non-physiologic cell fate transitions, fate conversion toward HSC has begun to yield relevant insights into HSC biology that may synergize with preexisting paradigms to better understand the ontogeny, maintenance, dysregulation, and therapeutic potential of HSCs.

Conflict of interest

The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

References

Albert R, Jeong H, Barabasi AL (2000) Error and attack tolerance of complex networks. *Nature* 406: 378 – 382

Anjos-Afonso F, Currie E, Palmer HG, Foster KE, Taussig DC, Bonnet D (2013) CD34(–) cells at the apex of the human hematopoietic stem cell hierarchy have distinctive cellular and molecular signatures. *Cell Stem Cell* 13: 161 – 174

Apostolou E, Hochedlinger K (2013) Chromatin dynamics during cellular reprogramming. *Nature* 502: 462 – 471

Arinobu Y, Mizuno S, Chong Y, Shigematsu H, Iino T, Iwasaki H, Graf T, Mayfield R, Chan S, Kastner P, Akashi K (2007) Reciprocal activation of GATA-1 and PU.1 marks initial specification of hematopoietic stem cells into myeloerythroid and myelolymphoid lineages. *Cell Stem Cell* 1: 416 – 427

Babovic S, Eaves CJ (2014) Hierarchical organization of fetal and adult hematopoietic stem cells. *Exp Cell Res* 329: 185 – 191

Bakanay SM, Demirer T (2012) Novel agents and approaches for stem cell mobilization in normal donors and patients. *Bone Marrow Transplant* 47: 1154 – 1163

Bandyopadhyay S, Harris DP, Adams GN, Lause GE, McHugh A, Tillmaand EG, Money A, Willard B, Fox PL, Dicorleto PE (2012) HOXA9 methylation by PRMT5 is essential for endothelial cell expression of leukocyte adhesion molecules. *Mol Cell Biol* 32: 1202 – 1213

Batta K, Florkowska M, Kouskoff V, Lacaud G (2014) Direct reprogramming of murine fibroblasts to hematopoietic progenitor cells. *Cell Rep* 9: 1871 – 1884

Beer PA, Knapp DJ, Kannan N, Miller PH, Babovic S, Bulaeva E, Aghaeepour N, Rabu G, Rostamirad S, Shih K, Wei L, Eaves CJ (2014) A dominant-negative isoform of IKAROS expands primitive normal human hematopoietic cells. *Stem Cell Reports* 3: 841 – 857

Beerman I, Bhattacharya D, Zandi S, Sigvardsson M, Weissman IL, Bryder D, Rossi DJ (2010) Functionally distinct hematopoietic stem cells modulate hematopoietic lineage potential during aging by a mechanism of clonal expansion. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 107: 5465 – 5470

Beerman I, Bock C, Garrison BS, Smith ZD, Gu H, Meissner A, Rossi DJ (2013) Proliferation-dependent alterations of the DNA methylation landscape underlie hematopoietic stem cell aging. *Cell Stem Cell* 12: 413 – 425

Beerman I, Rossi DJ (2014) Epigenetic regulation of hematopoietic stem cell aging. *Exp Cell Res* 329: 192 – 199

Bertrand JY, Chi NC, Santoso B, Teng S, Stainier DY, Traver D (2010) Haematopoietic stem cells derive directly from aortic endothelium during development. *Nature* 464: 108 – 111

Beug H, von Kirchbach A, Doderlein G, Conscience JF, Graf T (1979) Chicken hematopoietic cells transformed by seven strains of defective avian leukemia viruses display three distinct phenotypes of differentiation. *Cell* 18: 375 – 390

de Boer J, Yeung J, Ellu J, Ramanujachar R, Bornhauser B, Solarska O, Hubank M, Williams O, Brady HJ (2011) The E2A-HLF oncogenic fusion protein acts through Lmo2 and Bcl-2 to immortalize hematopoietic progenitors. *Leukemia* 25: 321 – 330

Boisset JC, van Cappellen W, Andrieu-Soler C, Galjart N, Dzierzak E, Robin C (2010) In vivo imaging of haematopoietic cells emerging from the mouse aortic endothelium. *Nature* 464: 116 – 120

Bonzanni N, Garg A, Feenstra KA, Schutte J, Kinston S, Miranda-Saavedra D, Heringa J, Xenarios I, Gottgens B (2013) Hard-wired heterogeneity in blood stem cells revealed using a dynamic regulatory network model. *Bioinformatics* 29: i80 – i88

Bredenkamp N, Ulyanchenko S, O'Neill KE, Manley NR, Vaidya HJ, Blackburn CC (2014) An organized and functional thymus generated from FOXN1-reprogrammed fibroblasts. *Nat Cell Biol* 16: 902 – 908

Briggs R, King TJ (1952) Transplantation of living nuclei from blastula cells into enucleated frogs' eggs. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 38: 455 – 463

Buganim Y, Itskovich E, Hu YC, Cheng AW, Ganz K, Sarkar S, Fu D, Welstead GG, Page DC, Jaenisch R (2012) Direct reprogramming of fibroblasts into embryonic Sertoli-like cells by defined factors. *Cell Stem Cell* 11: 373 – 386

Buganim Y, Faddah DA, Jaenisch R (2013) Mechanisms and models of somatic cell reprogramming. *Nat Rev Genet* 14: 427 – 439

Buganim Y, Markoulaki S, van Wietmarschen N, Hoke H, Wu T, Ganz K, Akhtar-Zaidi B, He Y, Abraham BJ, Porubsky D, Kulenkampff E, Faddah DA, Shi L, Gao Q, Sarkar S, Cohen M, Goldmann J, Nery JR, Schultz MD, Ecker JR *et al* (2014) The developmental potential of iPSCs is greatly influenced by reprogramming factor selection. *Cell Stem Cell* 15: 295 – 309

Butler JM, Gars EJ, James DJ, Nolan DJ, Scandura JM, Rafii S (2012) Development of a vascular niche platform for expansion of repopulating human cord blood stem and progenitor cells. *Blood* 120: 1344 – 1347

Cabezas-Wallscheid N, Klimmeck D, Hansson J, Lipka DB, Reyes A, Wang Q, Weichenhan D, Lier A, von Paleske L, Renders S, Wünsche P, Zeisberger P, Brocks D, Gu L, Herrmann C, Haas S, Essers MA, Brors B, Eils R, Huber W *et al* (2014) Identification of regulatory networks in HSCs and their immediate progeny via integrated proteome, transcriptome, and DNA Methylome analysis. *Cell Stem Cell* 15: 507 – 522

Cai X, Gaudet JJ, Mangan JK, Chen MJ, De Obaldia ME, Oo Z, Ernst P, Speck NA (2011) Runx1 loss minimally impacts long-term hematopoietic stem cells. *PLoS ONE* 6: e28430

Cantor AB, Iwasaki H, Arinobu Y, Moran TB, Shigematsu H, Sullivan MR, Akashi K, Orkin SH (2008) Antagonism of FOG-1 and GATA factors in fate choice for the mast cell lineage. *J Exp Med* 205: 611 – 624

Capellini TD, Di Giacomo G, Salsi V, Brendolan A, Ferretti E, Srivastava D, Zappavigna V, Selleri L (2006) Pbx1/Pbx2 requirement for distal limb patterning is mediated by the hierarchical control of Hox gene spatial distribution and Shh expression. *Development* 133: 2263 – 2273

Carey BW, Markoulaki S, Hanna JH, Faddah DA, Buganim Y, Kim J, Ganz K, Steine EJ, Cassady JP, Creyghton MP, Welstead GG, Gao Q, Jaenisch R (2011) Reprogramming factor stoichiometry influences the epigenetic state and biological properties of induced pluripotent stem cells. *Cell Stem Cell* 9: 588 – 598

Chen MJ, Yokomizo T, Zeigler BM, Dzierzak E, Speck NA (2009) Runx1 is required for the endothelial to haematopoietic cell transition but not thereafter. *Nature* 457: 887 – 891

Chen CC, Wang IE, Reddien PW (2013) pbx is required for pole and eye regeneration in planarians. *Development* 140: 719 – 729

Cherry AB, Daley GQ (2013) Reprogrammed cells for disease modeling and regenerative medicine. *Annu Rev Med* 64: 277 – 290

Chew JL, Loh YH, Zhang W, Chen X, Tam WL, Yeap LS, Li P, Ang YS, Lim B, Robson P, Ng HH (2005) Reciprocal transcriptional regulation of Pou5f1 and Sox2 via the Oct4/Sox2 complex in embryonic stem cells. *Mol Cell Biol* 25: 6031 – 6046

Chitteti BR, Kobayashi M, Cheng Y, Zhang H, Poteat BA, Broxmeyer HE, Pelus LM, Hanenberg H, Zollman A, Kamocka MM, Carlesso N, Cardoso AA, Kacena MA, Srour EF (2014) CD166 regulates human and murine hematopoietic stem cells and the hematopoietic niche. *Blood* 124: 519 – 529

Clements WK, Kim AD, Ong KG, Moore JC, Lawson ND, Traver D (2011) A somitic Wnt16/Notch pathway specifies haematopoietic stem cells. *Nature* 474: 220 – 224

Cobaleda C, Jochum W, Busslinger M (2007) Conversion of mature B cells into T cells by dedifferentiation to uncommitted progenitors. *Nature* 449: 473 – 477

Cosgun KN, Rahmig S, Mende N, Reinke S, Hauber I, Schäfer C, Petzold A, Weisbach H, Heidkamp G, Purbojo A, Cesnjevar R, Platz A, Bornhäuser M, Schmitz M, Dudziak D, Hauber J, Kirberg J, Waskow C (2014) Kit regulates HSC engraftment across the human-mouse species barrier. *Cell Stem Cell* 15: 227 – 238

D'Alonzo RC, Selvamurugan N, Karsenty G, Partridge NC (2002) Physical interaction of the activator protein-1 factors c-Fos and c-Jun with Cbfa1 for collagenase-3 promoter activation. *J Biol Chem* 277: 816 – 822

Davis RL, Weintraub H, Lassar AB (1987) Expression of a single transfected cDNA converts fibroblasts to myoblasts. *Cell* 51: 987 – 1000

De Val S, Black BL (2009) Transcriptional control of endothelial cell development. *Dev Cell* 16: 180 – 195

Diffner E, Beck D, Gudgin E, Thoms JA, Knezevic K, Pridans C, Foster S, Goode D, Lim WK, Boelen L, Metzeler KH, Micklem G, Bohlander SK, Buske C, Burnett A, Ottersbach K, Vassiliou GS, Olivier J, Wong JW, Göttgens B *et al* (2013) Activity of a heptad of transcription factors is associated with stem cell programs and clinical outcome in acute myeloid leukemia. *Blood* 121: 2289 – 2300

Doulatov S, Vo LT, Chou SS, Kim PG, Arora N, Li H, Hadland BK, Bernstein ID, Collins JJ, Zon LI, Daley GQ (2013) Induction of multipotential hematopoietic progenitors from human pluripotent stem cells via respecification of lineage-restricted precursors. *Cell Stem Cell* 13: 459 – 470

Drake AC, Chen Q, Chen J (2012) Engineering humanized mice for improved hematopoietic reconstitution. *Cell Mol Immunol* 9: 215 – 224

Dreyer SD, Zhou L, Machado MA, Horton WA, Zabel B, Winterpacht A, Lee B (1998) Cloning, characterization, and chromosomal assignment of the human ortholog of murine Zfp-37, a candidate gene for Nager syndrome. *Mamm Genome* 9: 458 – 462

Duan Z, Person RE, Lee HH, Huang S, Donadieu J, Badolato R, Grimes HL, Papayannopoulou T, Horwitz MS (2007) Epigenetic regulation of protein-coding and microRNA genes by the Gfi1-interacting tumor suppressor PRDM5. *Mol Cell Biol* 27: 6889 – 6902

Dykstra B, Kent D, Bowie M, McCaffrey L, Hamilton M, Lyons K, Lee S, Brinkman R, Eaves C (2007) Long-term propagation of distinct hematopoietic differentiation programs in vivo. *Cell Stem Cell* 1: 218 – 229

Elcheva I, Brok-Volchanskaya V, Kumar A, Liu P, Lee JH, Tong L, Vodyanik M, Swanson S, Stewart R, Kyba M, Yakubov E, Cooke J, Thomson JA, Slukvin I (2014) Direct induction of haematoendothelial programs in human pluripotent stem cells by transcriptional regulators. *Nat Commun* 5: 4372

Espin-Palazon R, Stachura DL, Campbell CA, Garcia-Moreno D, Del Cid N, Kim AD, Candel S, Meseguer J, Mulero V, Traver D (2014) Proinflammatory signaling regulates hematopoietic stem cell emergence. *Cell* 159: 1070 – 1085

Federation AJ, Bradner JE, Meissner A (2014) The use of small molecules in somatic-cell reprogramming. *Trends Cell Biol* 24: 179 – 187

Feng R, Desbordes SC, Xie H, Tillo ES, Pixley F, Stanley ER, Graf T (2008) PU.1 and C/EBPalpha/beta convert fibroblasts into macrophage-like cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 105: 6057 – 6062

Ficara F, Murphy MJ, Lin M, Cleary ML (2008) Pbx1 regulates self-renewal of long-term hematopoietic stem cells by maintaining their quiescence. *Cell Stem Cell* 2: 484 – 496

Fusaki N, Ban H, Nishiyama A, Saeki K, Hasegawa M (2009) Efficient induction of transgene-free human pluripotent stem cells using a vector based on Sendai virus, an RNA virus that does not integrate into the host genome. *Proc Jpn Acad* 85: 348 – 362

Gazit R, Garrison BS, Rao TN, Shay T, Costello JF, Erikson J, Collins JJ, Regev A, Wagers A, Rossi DJ (2013) Transcriptome analysis identifies regulators of hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells. *Stem Cell Reports* 1: 266 – 280

Gordon-Keylock S, Medvinsky A (2011) Endothelio-hematopoietic relationship: getting closer to the beginnings. *BMC Biol* 9: 88

Gosselin D, Link VM, Romanoski CE, Fonseca GJ, Eichenfield DZ, Spann NJ, Stender JD, Chun HB, Garner H, Geissmann F, Glass CK (2014) Environment drives selection and function of enhancers controlling tissue-specific macrophage identities. *Cell* 159: 1327 – 1340

Graf T, McNagny K, Brady G, Frampton J (1992) Chicken "erythroid" cells transformed by the Gag-Myb-Ets-encoding E26 leukemia virus are multipotent. *Cell* 70: 201 – 213

Graf T, Enver T (2009) Forcing cells to change lineages. *Nature* 462: 587 – 594

Grass JA, Boyer ME, Pal S, Wu J, Weiss MJ, Bresnick EH (2003) GATA-1-dependent transcriptional repression of GATA-2 via disruption of positive autoregulation and domain-wide chromatin remodeling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 100: 8811 – 8816

Gratwohl A, Baldomero H, Aljurf M, Pasquini MC, Bouzas LF, Yoshimi A, Szer J, Lipton J, Schwendener A, Gratwohl M, Frauendorfer K, Niederwieser D, Horowitz M, Kodera Y; Worldwide Network of Blood and Marrow Transplantation (2010) Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: a global perspective. *JAMA* 303: 1617 – 1624

Gurdon JB (1962) The developmental capacity of nuclei taken from intestinal epithelium cells of feeding tadpoles. *J Embryol Exp Morphol* 10: 622 – 640

Han DW, Tapia N, Hermann A, Hemmer K, Höing S, Araúzo-Bravo MJ, Zaehres H, Wu G, Frank S, Moritz S, Greber B, Yang JH, Lee HT, Schwamborn JC, Storch A, Schöler HR (2012) Direct reprogramming of fibroblasts into neural stem cells by defined factors. *Cell Stem Cell* 10: 465 – 472

Han JK, Chang SH, Cho HJ, Choi SB, Ahn HS, Lee J, Jeong H, Youn SW, Lee HJ, Kwon YW, Cho HJ, Oh BH, Oettgen P, Park YB, Kim HS (2014) Direct conversion of adult skin fibroblasts to endothelial cells by defined factors. *Circulation* 130: 1168 – 1178

Hess J, Porte D, Munz C, Angel P (2001) AP-1 and Cbfa/runt physically interact and regulate parathyroid hormone-dependent MMP13 expression in osteoblasts through a new osteoblast-specific element 2/AP-1 composite element. *J Biol Chem* 276: 20029 – 20038

Heyworth C, Pearson S, May G, Enver T (2002) Transcription factor-mediated lineage switching reveals plasticity in primary committed progenitor cells. *EMBO J* 21: 3770 – 3781

Hock H, Hamblen MJ, Rooke HM, Schindler JW, Saleque S, Fujiwara Y, Orkin SH (2004) Gfi-1 restricts proliferation and preserves functional integrity of haematopoietic stem cells. *Nature* 431: 1002 – 1007

Hoffman BG, Robertson G, Zavaglia B, Beach M, Cullum R, Lee S, Soukhatcheva G, Li L, Wederell ED, Thiessen N, Bilenky M, Cezard T, Tam A, Kamoh B, Birol I, Dai D, Zhao Y, Hirst M, Verchere CB, Helgason CD *et al* (2010) Locus co-occupancy, nucleosome positioning, and H3K4me1 regulate the functionality of FOXA2-, HNF4A-, and PDX1-bound loci in islets and liver. *Genome Res* 20: 1037 – 1051

Holstege H, Pfeiffer W, Sie D, Hulsman M, Nicholas TJ, Lee CC, Ross T, Lin J, Miller MA, Ylstra B, Meijers-Heijboer H, Brugman MH, Staal FJ, Holstege G, Reinders MJ, Harkins TT, Levy S, Sistermans EA (2014) Somatic mutations found in the healthy blood compartment of a 115-yr-old woman demonstrate oligoclonal hematopoiesis. *Genome Res* 24: 733 – 742

Horman SR, Velu CS, Chaubey A, Bourdeau T, Zhu J, Paul WE, Gebelein B, Grimes HL (2009) Gfi1 integrates progenitor versus granulocytic transcriptional programming. *Blood* 113: 5466 – 5475

Hu Q, Friedrich AM, Johnson LV, Clegg DO (2010) Memory in induced pluripotent stem cells: reprogrammed human retinal-pigmented epithelial cells show tendency for spontaneous redifferentiation. *Stem Cells* 28: 1981 – 1991

Huang S, Guo YP, May G, Enver T (2007) Bifurcation dynamics in lineage-commitment in bipotent progenitor cells. *Dev Biol* 305: 695 – 713

Huang G, Zhang P, Hirai H, Elf S, Yan X, Chen Z, Koschmieder S, Okuno Y, Dayaram T, Growney JD, Shivdasani RA, Gilliland DG, Speck NA, Nimer SD, Tenen DG (2008) PU.1 is a major downstream target of AML1 (RUNX1) in adult mouse hematopoiesis. *Nat Genet* 40: 51 – 60

Huang H, Yu M, Akie TE, Moran TB, Woo AJ, Tu N, Waldon Z, Lin YY, Steen H, Cantor AB (2009) Differentiation-dependent interactions between RUNX-1 and FLI-1 during megakaryocyte development. *Mol Cell Biol* 29: 4103 – 4115

Huang P, He Z, Ji S, Sun H, Xiang D, Liu C, Hu Y, Wang X, Hui L (2011) Induction of functional hepatocyte-like cells from mouse fibroblasts by defined factors. *Nature* 475: 386 – 389

Huang Y, Sitwala K, Bronstein J, Sanders D, Dandekar M, Collins C, Robertson G, MacDonald J, Cezard T, Bilenky M, Thiessen N, Zhao Y, Zeng T, Hirst M, Hero A, Jones S, Hess JL (2012) Identification and characterization of Hoxa9 binding sites in hematopoietic cells. *Blood* 119: 388 – 398

Hunger SP, Ohyashiki K, Toyama K, Cleary ML (1992) Hlf, a novel hepatic bZIP protein, shows altered DNA-binding properties following fusion to E2A in t (17;19) acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Genes Dev* 6: 1608 – 1620

Iacovino M, Chong D, Szatmari I, Hartweck L, Rux D, Caprioli A, Cleaver O, Kyba M (2011) HoxA3 is an apical regulator of haemogenic endothelium. *Nat Cell Biol* 13: 72 – 78

Ichikawa M, Asai T, Saito T, Seo S, Yamazaki I, Yamagata T, Mitani K, Chiba S, Ogawa S, Kurokawa M, Hirai H (2004) AML-1 is required for megakaryocytic maturation and lymphocytic differentiation, but not for maintenance of hematopoietic stem cells in adult hematopoiesis. *Nat Med* 10: 299 – 304

Ieda M, Fu JD, Delgado-Olguin P, Vedantham V, Hayashi Y, Bruneau BG, Srivastava D (2010) Direct reprogramming of fibroblasts into functional cardiomyocytes by defined factors. *Cell* 142: 375 – 386

Ivanovs A, Rybtsov S, Anderson RA, Turner ML, Medvinsky A (2014) Identification of the niche and phenotype of the first human hematopoietic stem cells. *Stem Cell Reports* 2: 449 – 456

Iwasaki H, Mizuno S, Arinobu Y, Ozawa H, Mori Y, Shigematsu H, Takatsu K, Tenen DG, Akashi K (2006) The order of expression of transcription factors directs hierarchical specification of hematopoietic lineages. *Genes Dev* 20: 3010 – 3021

Jaiswal S, Jamieson CH, Pang WW, Park CY, Chao MP, Majeti R, Traver D, van Rooijen N, Weissman IL (2009) CD47 is upregulated on circulating hematopoietic stem cells and leukemia cells to avoid phagocytosis. *Cell* 138: 271 – 285

Jin S, Zhao H, Yi Y, Nakata Y, Kalota A, Gewirtz AM (2010) c-Myb binds MLL through menin in human leukemia cells and is an important driver of MLL-associated leukemogenesis. *J Clin Invest* 120: 593 – 606

Kamao H, Mandai M, Okamoto S, Sakai N, Suga A, Sugita S, Kiryu J, Takahashi M (2014) Characterization of human induced pluripotent stem cell-derived retinal pigment epithelium cell sheets aiming for clinical application. *Stem Cell Reports* 2: 205 – 218

Kapoor N, Liang W, Marban E, Cho HC (2013) Direct conversion of quiescent cardiomyocytes to pacemaker cells by expression of Tbx18. *Nat Biotechnol* 31: 54 – 62

Kawagoe H, Kandilci A, Kranenburg TA, Grosveld GC (2007) Overexpression of N-Myc rapidly causes acute myeloid leukemia in mice. *Cancer Res* 67: 10677 – 10685

Kazemian M, Pham H, Wolfe SA, Brodsky MH, Sinha S (2013) Widespread evidence of cooperative DNA binding by transcription factors in *Drosophila* development. *Nucleic Acids Res* 41: 8237 – 8252

Kennedy M, Awong G, Sturgeon CM, Ditadi A, LaMotte-Mohs R, Zuniga-Pflucker JC, Keller G (2012) T lymphocyte potential marks the emergence of definitive hematopoietic progenitors in human pluripotent stem cell differentiation cultures. *Cell Rep* 2: 1722 – 1735

Kim K, Doi A, Wen B, Ng K, Zhao R, Cahan P, Kim J, Aryee MJ, Ji H, Ehrlich LI, Yabuuchi A, Takeuchi A, Cunniff KC, Hongguang H, McKinney-Freeman S, Naveiras O, Yoon TJ, Irizarry RA, Jung N, Seita J *et al* (2010) Epigenetic memory in induced pluripotent stem cells. *Nature* 467: 285 – 290

Kondo M, Scherer DC, Miyamoto T, King AG, Akashi K, Sugamura K, Weissman IL (2000) Cell-fate conversion of lymphoid-committed progenitors by instructive actions of cytokines. *Nature* 407: 383 – 386

Krumsiek J, Marr C, Schroeder T, Theis FJ (2011) Hierarchical differentiation of myeloid progenitors is encoded in the transcription factor network. *PLoS ONE* 6: e22649

Kueh HY, Champhekar A, Nutt SL, Elowitz MB, Rothenberg EV (2013) Positive feedback between PU.1 and the cell cycle controls myeloid differentiation. *Science* 341: 670 – 673

Kwong LS, Brown MH, Barclay AN, Hatherley D (2014) Signal-regulatory protein alpha from the NOD mouse binds human CD47 with an

exceptionally high affinity– implications for engraftment of human cells. *Immunology* 143: 61 – 67

Laiosa CV, Stadtfeld M, Xie H, de Andres-Aguayo L, Graf T (2006) Reprogramming of committed T cell progenitors to macrophages and dendritic cells by C/EBP alpha and PU.1 transcription factors. *Immunity* 25: 731 – 744

Lancrin C, Mazan M, Stefanska M, Patel R, Lichtinger M, Costa G, Vargel O, Wilson NK, Möröy T, Bonifer C, Göttgens B, Kouskoff V, Lacaud G (2012) GFI1 and GFI1B control the loss of endothelial identity of hemogenic endothelium during hematopoietic commitment. *Blood* 120: 314 – 322

Lapidot T, Dar A, Kollet O (2005) How do stem cells find their way home? *Blood* 106: 1901 – 1910

Lara-Astiaso D, Weiner A, Lorenzo-Vivas E, Zaretsky I, Jaitin DA, David E, Keren-Shaul H, Mildner A, Winter D, Jung S, Friedman N, Amit I (2014) Immunogenetics. Chromatin state dynamics during blood formation. *Science* 345: 943 – 949

Laurenti E, Varnum-Finney B, Wilson A, Ferrero I, Blanco-Bose WE, Ehninger A, Knoepfler PS, Cheng PF, MacDonald HR, Eisenman RN, Bernstein ID, Trumpp A (2008) Hematopoietic stem cell function and survival depend on c-Myc and N-Myc activity. *Cell Stem Cell* 3: 611 – 624

Lawrence HJ, Christensen J, Fong S, Hu YL, Weissman I, Sauvageau G, Humphries RK, Largman C (2005) Loss of expression of the Hoxa-9 homeobox gene impairs the proliferation and repopulating ability of hematopoietic stem cells. *Blood* 106: 3988 – 3994

Lichtinger M, Ingram R, Hannah R, Müller D, Clarke D, Assi SA, Lie-A-Ling M, Noailles L, Vijayabaskar MS, Wu M, Tenen DG, Westhead DR, Kouskoff V, Lacaud G, Göttgens B, Bonifer C (2012) RUNX1 reshapes the epigenetic landscape at the onset of haematopoiesis. *EMBO J* 31: 4318 – 4333

Lie ALM, Marinopoulou E, Li Y, Patel R, Stefanska M, Bonifer C, Miller C, Kouskoff V, Lacaud G (2014) RUNX1 positively regulates a cell adhesion and migration program in murine hemogenic endothelium prior to blood emergence. *Blood* 124: e11 – e20

Lieu YK, Reddy EP (2009) Conditional c-myb knockout in adult hematopoietic stem cells leads to loss of self-renewal due to impaired proliferation and accelerated differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 106: 21689 – 21694

Lim KC, Hosoya T, Brandt W, Ku CJ, Hosoya-Ohmura S, Camper SA, Yamamoto M, Engel JD (2012) Conditional Gata2 inactivation results in HSC loss and lymphatic mispatterning. *J Clin Invest* 122: 3705 – 3717

Lindberg SR, Olsson A, Persson AM, Olsson I (2003) Interactions between the leukaemia-associated ETO homologues of nuclear repressor proteins. *Eur J Haematol* 71: 439 – 447

Liu ML, Zang T, Zou Y, Chang JC, Gibson JR, Huber KM, Zhang CL (2013) Small molecules enable neurogenin 2 to efficiently convert human fibroblasts into cholinergic neurons. *Nat Commun* 4: 2183

Lu R, Neff NF, Quake SR, Weissman IL (2011) Tracking single hematopoietic stem cells in vivo using high-throughput sequencing in conjunction with viral genetic barcoding. *Nat Biotechnol* 29: 928 – 933

Mandal PK, Rossi DJ (2013) Reprogramming human fibroblasts to pluripotency using modified mRNA. *Nat Protoc* 8: 568 – 582

Matsumoto K, Isagawa T, Nishimura T, Ogaeri T, Eto K, Miyazaki S, Miyazaki J, Aburatani H, Nakauchi H, Ema H (2009) Stepwise development of hematopoietic stem cells from embryonic stem cells. *PLoS ONE* 4: e4820

McCormack MP, Young LF, Vasudevan S, de Graaf CA, Codrington R, Rabbitts TH, Jane SM, Curtis DJ (2010) The Lmo2 oncogene initiates leukemia in mice by inducing thymocyte self-renewal. *Science* 327: 879 – 883

Mercader N, Tanaka EM, Torres M (2005) Proximodistal identity during vertebrate limb regeneration is regulated by Meis homeodomain proteins. *Development* 132: 4131 – 4142

Mikkola I, Heavey B, Horcher M, Busslinger M (2002) Reversion of B cell commitment upon loss of Pax5 expression. *Science* 297: 110 – 113

Mitchell R, Szabo E, Shapovalova Z, Aslostovar L, Makondo K, Bhatia M (2014) Molecular evidence for OCT4-induced plasticity in adult human fibroblasts required for direct cell fate conversion to lineage specific progenitors. *Stem Cells* 32: 2178 – 2187

Montserrat N, Nivet E, Sancho-Martinez I, Hishida T, Kumar S, Miquel L, Cortina C, Hishida Y, Xia Y, Esteban CR, Izpisua Belmonte JC (2013) Reprogramming of human fibroblasts to pluripotency with lineage specifiers. *Cell Stem Cell* 13: 341 – 350

Morgan R, Pirard PM, Shears L, Sohal J, Pettengell R, Pandha HS (2007) Antagonism of HOX/PBX dimer formation blocks the in vivo proliferation of melanoma. *Cancer Res* 67: 5806 – 5813

Morita Y, Ema H, Nakauchi H (2010) Heterogeneity and hierarchy within the most primitive hematopoietic stem cell compartment. *J Exp Med* 207: 1173 – 1182

Morris SA, Cahan P, Li H, Zhao AM, San Roman AK, Shivdasani RA, Collins JJ, Daley GQ (2014) Dissecting engineered cell types and enhancing cell fate conversion via CellNet. *Cell* 158: 889 – 902

Morrison SJ, Scadden DT (2014) The bone marrow niche for haematopoietic stem cells. *Nature* 505: 327 – 334

Nagel S, Venturini L, Meyer C, Kaufmann M, Scherr M, Drexler HG, Macleod RA (2011) Transcriptional deregulation of oncogenic myocyte enhancer factor 2C in T-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Leuk Lymphoma* 52: 290 – 297

Najm FJ, Lager AM, Zaremba A, Wyatt K, Caprariello AV, Factor DC, Karl RT, Maeda T, Miller RH, Tesar PJ (2013) Transcription factor-mediated reprogramming of fibroblasts to expandable, myelinogenic oligodendrocyte progenitor cells. *Nat Biotechnol* 31: 426 – 433

Nakamura S, Takayama N, Hirata S, Seo H, Endo H, Ochi K, Fujita K, Koike T, Harimoto K, Dohda T, Watanabe A, Okita K, Takahashi N, Sawaguchi A, Yamanaka S, Nakauchi H, Nishimura S, Eto K (2014) Expandable megakaryocyte cell lines enable clinically applicable generation of platelets from human induced pluripotent stem cells. *Cell Stem Cell* 14: 535 – 548

Nerlov C, Querfurth E, Kulessa H, Graf T (2000) GATA-1 interacts with the myeloid PU.1 transcription factor and represses PU.1-dependent transcription. *Blood* 95: 2543 – 2551

Nestor MW, Noggle SA (2013) Standardization of human stem cell pluripotency using bioinformatics. *Stem Cell Res Ther* 4: 37

Ng AP, Loughran SJ, Metcalf D, Hyland CD, de Graaf CA, Hu Y, Smyth GK, Hilton DJ, Kile BT, Alexander WS (2011) Erg is required for self-renewal of hematopoietic stem cells during stress hematopoiesis in mice. *Blood* 118: 2454 – 2461

Niwa H, Burdon T, Chambers I, Smith A (1998) Self-renewal of pluripotent embryonic stem cells is mediated via activation of STAT3. *Genes Dev* 12: 2048 – 2060

North TE, de Bruijn MF, Stacy T, Talebian L, Lind E, Robin C, Binder M, Dzierzak E, Speck NA (2002) Runx1 expression marks long-term repopulating hematopoietic stem cells in the midgestation mouse embryo. *Immunity* 16: 661 – 672

North TE, Goessling W, Peeters M, Li P, Ceol C, Lord AM, Weber GJ, Harris J, Cutting CC, Huang P, Dzierzak E, Zon LI (2009) Hematopoietic stem cell development is dependent on blood flow. *Cell* 137: 736 – 748

Notta F, Doulatov S, Laurenti E, Poeppl A, Jurisica I, Dick JE (2011) Isolation of single human hematopoietic stem cells capable of long-term multilineage engraftment. *Science* 333: 218 – 221

Nutt SL, Heavey B, Rolink AG, Busslinger M (1999) Commitment to the B-lymphoid lineage depends on the transcription factor Pax5. *Nature* 401: 556 – 562

Okuda T, van Deursen J, Hiebert SW, Grosveld G, Downing JR (1996) AML1, the target of multiple chromosomal translocations in human leukemia, is essential for normal fetal liver hematopoiesis. *Cell* 84: 321 – 330

van Oosten AL, Costa Y, Smith A, Silva JC (2012) JAK/STAT3 signalling is sufficient and dominant over antagonistic cues for the establishment of naive pluripotency. *Nat Commun* 3: 817

Oram SH, Thoms JA, Pridans C, Janes ME, Kinston SJ, Anand S, Landry JR, Lock RB, Jayaraman PS, Huntly BJ, Pimanda JE, Göttgens B (2010) A previously unrecognized promoter of LMO2 forms part of a transcriptional regulatory circuit mediating LMO2 expression in a subset of T-acute lymphoblastic leukaemia patients. *Oncogene* 29: 5796 – 5808

Orkin SH (1995) Transcription factors and hematopoietic development. *J Biol Chem* 270: 4955 – 4958

Palmqvist L, Pineault N, Wasslavik C, Humphries RK (2007) Candidate genes for expansion and transformation of hematopoietic stem cells by NUP98-HOX fusion genes. *PLoS ONE* 2: e768

Peeters M, Ottersbach K, Bollerot K, Orelio C, de Bruijn M, Wijgerde M, Dzierzak E (2009) Ventral embryonic tissues and Hedgehog proteins induce early AGM hematopoietic stem cell development. *Development* 136: 2613 – 2621

Pencovich N, Jaschek R, Tanay A, Groner Y (2011) Dynamic combinatorial interactions of RUNX1 and cooperating partners regulates megakaryocytic differentiation in cell line models. *Blood* 117: e1 – e14

Pereira CF, Chang B, Qiu J, Niu X, Papatsenko D, Hendry CE, Clark NR, Nomura-Kitabayashi A, Kovacic JC, Ma'ayan A, Schaniel C, Lemischka IR, Moore K (2013) Induction of a hemogenic program in mouse fibroblasts. *Cell Stem Cell* 13: 205 – 218

Petersdorf EW (2013) The major histocompatibility complex: a model for understanding graft-versus-host disease. *Blood* 122: 1863 – 1872

Pimanda JE, Ottersbach K, Knezevic K, Kinston S, Chan WY, Wilson NK, Landry JR, Wood AD, Kolb-Kokocinski A, Green AR, Tannahill D, Lacaud G, Kouskoff V, Göttgens B (2007) Gata2, Fli1, and Scl form a recursively wired gene-regulatory circuit during early hematopoietic development. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 104: 17692 – 17697

Pimkin M, Kossenkov AV, Mishra T, Morrissey CS, Wu W, Keller CA, Blobel GA, Lee D, Beer MA, Hardison RC, Weiss MJ (2014) Divergent functions of hematopoietic transcription factors in lineage priming and differentiation during erythro-megakaryopoiesis. *Genome Res* 24: 1932 – 1944

Pishesha N, Thiru P, Shi J, Eng JC, Sankaran VG, Lodish HF (2014) Transcriptional divergence and conservation of human and mouse erythropoiesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 111: 4103 – 4108

Plowright L, Harrington KJ, Pandha HS, Morgan R (2009) HOX transcription factors are potential therapeutic targets in non-small-cell lung cancer (targeting HOX genes in lung cancer). *Br J Cancer* 100: 470 – 475

Pongubala JM, Northrup DL, Lancki DW, Medina KL, Treiber T, Bertolino E, Thomas M, Grosschedl R, Allman D, Singh H (2008) Transcription factor EBF restricts alternative lineage options and promotes B cell fate commitment independently of Pax5. *Nat Immunol* 9: 203 – 215

Pulecio J, Nivet E, Sancho-Martinez I, Vitaloni M, Guenechea G, Xia Y, Kurian L, Dubova I, Bueren J, Laricchia-Robbio L, Izpisua Belmonte JC (2014) Conversion of human fibroblasts into monocyte-like progenitor cells. *Stem Cells* 32: 2923 – 2938

Qi X, Hong J, Chaves L, Zhuang Y, Chen Y, Wang D, Chabon J, Graham B, Ohmori K, Li Y, Huang H (2013) Antagonistic regulation by the transcription factors C/EBPalpha and MITF specifies basophil and mast cell fates. *Immunity* 39: 97 – 110

Rao CV, Wolf DM, Arkin AP (2002) Control, exploitation and tolerance of intracellular noise. *Nature* 420: 231 – 237

Ravasi T, Suzuki H, Cannistraci CV, Katayama S, Bajic VB, Tan K, Akalin A, Schmeier S, Kanamori-Katayama M, Bertin N, Carninci P, Daub CO, Forrest AR, Gough J, Grimmond S, Han JH, Hashimoto T, Hide W, Hofmann O, Kamburov A *et al* (2010) An atlas of combinatorial transcriptional regulation in mouse and man. *Cell* 140: 744 – 752

Raz R, Lee CK, Cannizzaro LA, d'Eustachio P, Levy DE (1999) Essential role of STAT3 for embryonic stem cell pluripotency. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 96: 2846 – 2851

Riddell J, Gazit R, Garrison BS, Guo G, Saadatpour A, Mandal PK, Ebina W, Volchkov P, Yuan GC, Orkin SH, Rossi DJ (2014) Reprogramming committed murine blood cells to induced hematopoietic stem cells with defined factors. *Cell* 157: 549 – 564

Robinton DA, Daley GQ (2012) The promise of induced pluripotent stem cells in research and therapy. *Nature* 481: 295 – 305

Roensch K, Tazaki A, Chara O, Tanaka EM (2013) Progressive specification rather than intercalation of segments during limb regeneration. *Science* 342: 1375 – 1379

Rosenfeld MG, Lunyak VV, Glass CK (2006) Sensors and signals: a coactivator/corepressor/epigenetic code for integrating signal-dependent programs of transcriptional response. *Genes Dev* 20: 1405 – 1428

Rossi DJ, Bryder D, Zahn JM, Ahlenius H, Sonu R, Wagers AJ, Weissman IL (2005) Cell intrinsic alterations underlie hematopoietic stem cell aging. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 102: 9194 – 9199

Rössig L, Urbich C, Brühl T, Dernbach E, Heeschen C, Chavakis E, Sasaki K, Aicher D, Diehl F, Seeger F, Potente M, Aicher A, Zanetta L, Dejana E, Zeiher AM, Dimmeler S (2005) Histone deacetylase activity is essential for the expression of HoxA9 and for endothelial commitment of progenitor cells. *J Exp Med* 201: 1825 – 1835

Rudensky AY (2011) Regulatory T cells and Foxp3. *Immunol Rev* 241: 260 – 268

Rybtsov S, Sobiesiak M, Taoudi S, Souilhol C, Senserrich J, Liakhovitskaia A, Ivanovs A, Frampton J, Zhao S, Medvinsky A (2011) Hierarchical organization and early hematopoietic specification of the developing HSC lineage in the AGM region. *J Exp Med* 208: 1305 – 1315

Rybtsov S, Batsivari A, Bilotkach K, Paruzina D, Senserrich J, Nerushev O, Medvinsky A (2014) Tracing the origin of the HSC hierarchy reveals an SCF-dependent, IL-3-independent CD43(–) embryonic precursor. *Stem Cell Reports* 3: 489 – 501

Sandler VM, Lis R, Liu Y, Kedem A, James D, Elemento O, Butler JM, Scandura JM, Rafii S (2014) Reprogramming human endothelial cells to haematopoietic cells requires vascular induction. *Nature* 511: 312 – 318

Sarrazin S, Mossadegh-Keller N, Fukao T, Aziz A, Mourcin F, Vanhille L, Kelly Modis L, Kastner P, Chan S, Duprez E, Otto C, Sieweke MH (2009) MafB restricts M-CSF-dependent myeloid commitment divisions of hematopoietic stem cells. *Cell* 138: 300 – 313

Schaffer AE, Freude KK, Nelson SB, Sander M (2010) Nkx6 transcription factors and Ptf1a function as antagonistic lineage determinants in multipotent pancreatic progenitors. *Dev Cell* 18: 1022 – 1029

Schaniel C, Bruno L, Melchers F, Rolink AG (2002) Multiple hematopoietic cell lineages develop in vivo from transplanted Pax5-deficient pre-B I-cell clones. *Blood* 99: 472 – 478

Scotti C, Piccinini E, Takizawa H, Todorov A, Bourgine P, Papadimitropoulos A, Barbero A, Manz MG, Martin I (2013) Engineering of a functional bone

organ through endochondral ossification. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 110: 3997 – 4002

Sekiya S, Suzuki A (2011) Direct conversion of mouse fibroblasts to hepatocyte-like cells by defined factors. *Nature* 475: 390 – 393

Shears L, Plowright L, Harrington K, Pandha HS, Morgan R (2008) Disrupting the interaction between HOX and PBX causes necrotic and apoptotic cell death in the renal cancer lines CaKi-2 and 769-P. *J Urol* 180: 2196 – 2201

Shen WF, Montgomery JC, Rozenfeld S, Moskow JJ, Lawrence HJ, Buchberg AM, Largman C (1997) AbdB-like Hox proteins stabilize DNA binding by the Meis1 homeodomain proteins. *Mol Cell Biol* 17: 6448 – 6458

Shi Y, Do JT, Desponts C, Hahm HS, Scholer HR, Ding S (2008) A combined chemical and genetic approach for the generation of induced pluripotent stem cells. *Cell Stem Cell* 2: 525 – 528

Shojaei F, Trowbridge J, Gallacher L, Yuefei L, Goodale D, Karanu F, Levac K, Bhatia M (2005) Hierarchical and ontogenic positions serve to define the molecular basis of human hematopoietic stem cell behavior. *Dev Cell* 8: 651 – 663

Shu J, Wu C, Wu Y, Li Z, Shao S, Zhao W, Tang X, Yang H, Shen L, Zuo X, Yang W, Shi Y, Chi X, Zhang H, Gao G, Shu Y, Yuan K, He W, Tang C, Zhao Y *et al* (2013) Induction of pluripotency in mouse somatic cells with lineage specifiers. *Cell* 153: 963 – 975

Shultz LD, Brehm MA, Garcia-Martinez JV, Greiner DL (2012) Humanized mice for immune system investigation: progress, promise and challenges. *Nat Rev Immunol* 12: 786 – 798

Siena S, Schiavo R, Pedrazzoli P, Carlo-Stella C (2000) Therapeutic relevance of CD34 cell dose in blood cell transplantation for cancer therapy. *J Clin Oncol* 18: 1360 – 1377

Son EY, Ichida JK, Wainger BJ, Toma JS, Rafuse VF, Woolf CJ, Eggan K (2011) Conversion of mouse and human fibroblasts into functional spinal motor neurons. *Cell Stem Cell* 9: 205 – 218

Souroullas GP, Salmon JM, Sablitzky F, Curtis DJ, Goodell MA (2009) Adult hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells require either Lyl1 or Scl for survival. *Cell Stem Cell* 4: 180 – 186

Speth JM, Hoggatt J, Singh P, Pelus LM (2014) Pharmacologic increase in HIF1alpha enhances hematopoietic stem and progenitor homing and engraftment. *Blood* 123: 203 – 207

Staber PB, Zhang P, Ye M, Welner RS, Nombela-Arrieta C, Bach C, Kerenyi M, Bartholdy BA, Zhang H, Alberich-Jordà M, Lee S, Yang H, Ng F, Zhang J, Leddin M, Silberstein LE, Hoefler G, Orkin SH, Göttgens B, Rosenbauer F *et al* (2013) Sustained PU.1 levels balance cell-cycle regulators to prevent exhaustion of adult hematopoietic stem cells. *Mol Cell* 49: 934 – 946

Stewart MH (2014) Pluripotency and targeted reprogramming: strategies, disease modeling and drug screening. *Curr Drug Deliv* 11: 592 – 604

Sturgeon CM, Ditadi A, Clarke RL, Keller G (2013) Defining the path to hematopoietic stem cells. *Nat Biotechnol* 31: 416 – 418

Sun M, Song CX, Huang H, Frankenberger CA, Sankarasharma D, Gomes S, Chen P, Chen J, Chada KK, He C, Rosner MR (2013) HMGA2/TET1/HOXA9 signaling pathway regulates breast cancer growth and metastasis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 110: 9920 – 9925

Sun D, Luo M, Jeong M, Rodriguez B, Xia Z, Hannah R, Wang H, Le T, Faull KF, Chen R, Gu H, Bock C, Meissner A, Göttgens B, Darlington GJ, Li W, Goodell MA (2014a) Epigenomic profiling of young and aged HSCs reveals concerted changes during aging that reinforce self-renewal. *Cell Stem Cell* 14: 673 – 688

Sun J, Ramos A, Chapman B, Johnnidis JB, Le L, Ho YJ, Klein A, Hofmann O, Camargo FD (2014b) Clonal dynamics of native haematopoiesis. *Nature* 514: 322 – 327

Szabo E, Rampalli S, Risueno RM, Schnerch A, Mitchell R, Fiebig-Comyn A, Levadoux-Martin M, Bhatia M (2010) Direct conversion of human fibroblasts to multilineage blood progenitors. *Nature* 468: 521 – 526

Takahashi K, Yamanaka S (2006) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from mouse embryonic and adult fibroblast cultures by defined factors. *Cell* 126: 663 – 676

Takahashi K, Tanabe K, Ohnuki M, Narita M, Ichisaka T, Tomoda K, Yamanaka S (2007) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from adult human fibroblasts by defined factors. *Cell* 131: 861 – 872

Takashima Y, Guo G, Loos R, Nichols J, Ficz G, Krueger F, Oxley D, Santos F, Clarke J, Mansfield W, Reik W, Bertone P, Smith A (2014) Resetting transcription factor control circuitry toward ground-state pluripotency in human. *Cell* 158: 1254 – 1269

Tanaka Y, Joshi A, Wilson NK, Kinston S, Nishikawa S, Gottgens B (2012) The transcriptional programme controlled by Runx1 during early embryonic blood development. *Dev Biol* 366: 404 – 419

Thorsteinsdottir U, Kroon E, Jerome L, Blasi F, Sauvageau G (2001) Defining roles for HOX and MEIS1 genes in induction of acute myeloid leukemia. *Mol Cell Biol* 21: 224 – 234

Tober J, Yzaguirre AD, Piwarzyk E, Speck NA (2013) Distinct temporal requirements for Runx1 in hematopoietic progenitors and stem cells. *Development* 140: 3765 – 3776

Torisawa YS, Spina CS, Mammoto T, Mammoto A, Weaver JC, Tat T, Collins JJ, Ingber DE (2014) Bone marrow-on-a-chip replicates hematopoietic niche physiology in vitro. *Nat Methods* 11: 663 – 669

Trivedi CM, Patel RC, Patel CV (2008) Differential regulation of HOXA9 expression by nuclear factor kappa B (NF-kappaB) and HOXA9. *Gene* 408: 187 – 195

Unnisa Z, Clark JP, Roychoudhury J, Thomas E, Tessarollo L, Copeland NG, Jenkins NA, Grimes HL, Kumar AR (2012) Meis1 preserves hematopoietic stem cells in mice by limiting oxidative stress. *Blood* 120: 4973 – 4981

Urbanek P, Wang ZQ, Fetka I, Wagner EF, Busslinger M (1994) Complete block of early B cell differentiation and altered patterning of the posterior midbrain in mice lacking Pax5/BSAP. *Cell* 79: 901 – 912

Vaskova EA, Stekleneva AE, Medvedev SP, Zakian SM (2013) "Epigenetic memory" phenomenon in induced pluripotent stem cells. *Acta Naturae* 5: 15 – 21

Vierbuchen T, Ostermeier A, Pang ZP, Kokubu Y, Sudhof TC, Wernig M (2010) Direct conversion of fibroblasts to functional neurons by defined factors. *Nature* 463: 1035 – 1041

Wahlestedt M, Norddahl GL, Sten G, Ugale A, Frisk MA, Mattsson R, Deierborg T, Sigvardsson M, Bryder D (2013) An epigenetic component of hematopoietic stem cell aging amenable to reprogramming into a young state. *Blood* 121: 4257 – 4264

Wainger BJ, Kiskinis E, Mellin C, Wiskow O, Han SS, Sandoe J, Perez NP, Williams LA, Lee S, Boulting G, Berry JD, Brown RH Jr, Cudkowicz ME, Bean BP, Eggan K, Woolf CJ (2014) Intrinsic membrane hyperexcitability of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis patient-derived motor neurons. *Cell Rep* 7: 1 – 11

Wang LC, Swat W, Fujiwara Y, Davidson L, Visvader J, Kuo F, Alt FW, Gilliland DG, Golub TR, Orkin SH (1998) The TEL/ETV6 gene is required specifically for hematopoiesis in the bone marrow. *Genes Dev* 12: 2392 – 2402

Wang L, Menendez P, Shojaei F, Li L, Mazurier F, Dick JE, Cerdan C, Levac K, Bhatia M (2005a) Generation of hematopoietic repopulating cells from human embryonic stem cells independent of ectopic HOXB4 expression. *J Exp Med* 201: 1603 – 1614

Wang Y, Yates F, Naveiras O, Ernst P, Daley GQ (2005b) Embryonic stem cell-derived hematopoietic stem cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 102: 19081 – 19086

Warren L, Manos PD, Ahfeldt T, Loh YH, Li H, Lau F, Ebina W, Mandal PK, Smith ZD, Meissner A, Daley GQ, Brack AS, Collins JJ, Cowan C, Schlaeger

TM, Rossi DJ (2010) Highly efficient reprogramming to pluripotency and directed differentiation of human cells with synthetic modified mRNA. *Cell Stem Cell* 7: 618 – 630

Wernig M, Lengner CJ, Hanna J, Lodato MA, Steine E, Foreman R, Staerk J, Markoulaki S, Jaenisch R (2008) A drug-inducible transgenic system for direct reprogramming of multiple somatic cell types. *Nat Biotechnol* 26: 916 – 924

Wilkinson RN, Pouget C, Gering M, Russell AJ, Davies SG, Kimelman D, Patient R (2009) Hedgehog and Bmp polarize hematopoietic stem cell emergence in the zebrafish dorsal aorta. *Dev Cell* 16: 909 – 916

Wilkinson AC, Kawata VK, Schütte J, Gao X, Antoniou S, Baumann C, Woodhouse S, Hannah R, Tanaka Y, Swiers G, Moignard V, Fisher J, Hidetoshi S, Tijssen MR, de Bruijn MF, Liu P, Göttgens B (2014) Single-cell analyses of regulatory network perturbations using enhancer-targeting TALEs suggest novel roles for PU.1 during haematopoietic specification. *Development* 141: 4018 – 4030

Wilmut I, Schnieke AE, McWhir J, Kind AJ, Campbell KH (1997) Viable offspring derived from fetal and adult mammalian cells. *Nature* 385: 810 – 813

Wilson NK, Foster SD, Wang X, Knezevic K, Schütte J, Kaimakis P, Chilarska PM, Kinston S, Ouwehand WH, Dzierzak E, Pimanda JE, de Bruijn MF, Göttgens B (2010a) Combinatorial transcriptional control in blood stem/progenitor cells: genome-wide analysis of ten major transcriptional regulators. *Cell Stem Cell* 7: 532 – 544

Wilson NK, Timms RT, Kinston SJ, Cheng YH, Oram SH, Landry JR, Mullender J, Ottersbach K, Gottgens B (2010b) Gfi1 expression is controlled by five distinct regulatory regions spread over 100 kilobases, with Scl/Tal1, Gata2, PU.1, Erg, Meis1, and Runx1 acting as upstream regulators in early hematopoietic cells. *Mol Cell Biol* 30: 3853 – 3863

Wu JW, Runnels JM, Lin CP (2014) Intravital imaging of hematopoietic stem cells in the mouse skull. *Methods Mol Biol* 1185: 247 – 265

Xie H, Ye M, Feng R, Graf T (2004) Stepwise reprogramming of B cells into macrophages. *Cell* 117: 663 – 676

Yamada Y, Warren AJ, Dobson C, Forster A, Pannell R, Rabbitts TH (1998) The T cell leukemia LIM protein Lmo2 is necessary for adult mouse hematopoiesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 95: 3890 – 3895

Yang J, van Oosten AL, Theunissen TW, Guo G, Silva JC, Smith A (2010) Stat3 activation is limiting for reprogramming to ground state pluripotency. *Cell Stem Cell* 7: 319 – 328

Yang N, Zuchero JB, Ahlenius H, Marro S, Ng YH, Vierbuchen T, Hawkins JS, Geissler R, Barres BA, Wernig M (2013) Generation of oligodendroglial cells by direct lineage conversion. *Nat Biotechnol* 31: 434 – 439

Yoshimoto M, Porayette P, Glosson NL, Conway SJ, Carlesso N, Cardoso AA, Kaplan MH, Yoder MC (2012) Autonomous murine T-cell progenitor production in the extra-embryonic yolk sac before HSC emergence. *Blood* 119: 5706 – 5714

Yoshioka N, Gros E, Li HR, Kumar S, Deacon DC, Maron C, Muotri AR, Chi NC, Fu XD, Yu BD, Dowdy SF (2013) Efficient generation of human iPSCs by a synthetic self-replicative RNA. *Cell Stem Cell* 13: 246 – 254

Zaret KS, Carroll JS (2011) Pioneer transcription factors: establishing competence for gene expression. *Genes Dev* 25: 2227 – 2241

Zeng H, Yucel R, Kosan C, Klein-Hitpass L, Moroy T (2004) Transcription factor Gfi1 regulates self-renewal and engraftment of hematopoietic stem cells. *EMBO J* 23: 4116 – 4125

Zhang P, Zhang X, Iwama A, Yu C, Smith KA, Mueller BU, Narravula S, Torbett BE, Orkin SH, Tenen DG (2000) PU.1 inhibits GATA-1 function and erythroid differentiation by blocking GATA-1 DNA binding. *Blood* 96: 2641 – 2648

Zhang H, Ma Y, Gu J, Liao B, Li J, Wong J, Jin Y (2012) Reprogramming of somatic cells via TAT-mediated protein transduction of recombinant factors. *Biomaterials* 33: 5047 – 5055

Zhang H, Alberich-Jorda M, Amabile G, Yang H, Staber PB, Di Ruscio A, Welner RS, Ebralidze A, Zhang J, Levantini E, Lefebvre V, Valk PJ, Delwel R, Hoogenkamp M, Nerlov C, Cammenga J, Saez B, Scadden DT, Bonifer C, Ye M *et al* (2013) Sox4 is a key oncogenic target in C/EBPalpha mutant acute myeloid leukemia. *Cancer Cell* 24: 575 – 588

Zhou Q, Brown J, Kanarek A, Rajagopal J, Melton DA (2008) In vivo reprogramming of adult pancreatic exocrine cells to beta-cells. *Nature* 455: 627 – 632

Zhou X, Bailey-Bucktrout SL, Jeker LT, Penaranda C, Martinez-Llordella M, Ashby M, Nakayama M, Rosenthal W, Bluestone JA (2009) Instability of the transcription factor Foxp3 leads to the generation of pathogenic memory T cells in vivo. *Nat Immunol* 10: 1000 – 1007

Zovein AC, Hofmann JJ, Lynch M, French WJ, Turlo KA, Yang Y, Becker MS, Zanetta L, Dejana E, Gasson JC, Tallquist MD, Iruela-Arispe ML (2008) Fate tracing reveals the endothelial origin of hematopoietic stem cells. *Cell Stem Cell* 3: 625 – 636

Review

OPEN ACCESS

THE EMBO JOURNAL

Focus: Induced Pluripotency & Cellular Reprogramming

Probing disorders of the nervous system using reprogramming approaches

Justin K Ichida[1,*] & Evangelos Kiskinis[2,**]

Abstract

The groundbreaking technologies of induced pluripotency and lineage conversion have generated a genuine opportunity to address fundamental aspects of the diseases that affect the nervous system. These approaches have granted us unrestricted access to the brain and spinal cord of patients and have allowed for the study of disease in the context of human cells, expressing physiological levels of proteins and under each patient's unique genetic constellation. Along with this unprecedented opportunity have come significant challenges, particularly in relation to patient variability, experimental design and data interpretation. Nevertheless, significant progress has been achieved over the past few years both in our ability to create the various neural subtypes that comprise the nervous system and in our efforts to develop cellular models of disease that recapitulate clinical findings identified in patients. In this Review, we present tables listing the various human neural cell types that can be generated and the neurological disease modeling studies that have been reported, describe the current state of the field, highlight important breakthroughs and discuss the next steps and future challenges.

Keywords directed differentiation; disease modeling; neurologic disorder; neuronal development

DOI 10.15252/embj.201591267 | Received 12 February 2015 | Revised 14 April 2015 | Accepted 14 April 2015 | Published online 29 April 2015

The EMBO Journal (2015) 34: 1456–1477

Introduction

Diseases of the nervous system represent an enormous burden for society in terms of human suffering and financial cost. While significant advancements have been achieved over the last few decades particularly in terms of genetic linkage, clinical classification and patient care, effective treatments are lacking. The inaccessibility of the relevant tissues and cell types in the central nervous system (CNS) and the complex multifactorial nature of most neurological disorders have hampered research progress. While animal models have been crucial in the investigation of disease mechanisms, fundamental developmental, biochemical and physiological differences exist between animals and humans. The importance of utilizing human cells for these purposes is evident by the large number of drugs that show efficacy and safety in rodent models of diseases but subsequently fail in human clinical trials, which are partly attributed to these species differences (Rubin, 2008). Furthermore, the overwhelming majority of neurological disease is of a sporadic nature, rendering animal modeling ineffective, while it is unclear whether the relatively rare monogenic forms of disease truly represent the vast majority of sporadic cases.

The simultaneous development of methods for reprogramming adult cells into induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs; Takahashi *et al*, 2007; Yu *et al*, 2007; Park *et al*, 2008) and the directed differentiation of pluripotent stem cells into distinct neuronal subtypes (Williams *et al*, 2012) suggested an attractive route to a novel model system for the study of neurological disorders. Patient-specific iPSCs can be generated by epigenetic reprogramming of various adult cell types such as skin fibroblasts and blood mononuclear cells and just like embryonic stem cells (ESCs), self-renew indefinitely and retain the potential to give rise to all cell types in the human body (Takahashi *et al*, 2007). More recently, sophisticated lineage conversion approaches have allowed for the direct generation of neurons and neural cell types from adult cells by means of overexpressing key transcription factors (for a detailed description see Tsunemoto *et al*, 2014). These methods have overcome some of the limitations of directed differentiation and have enabled for the generation of cell types that in many cases were previously unattainable.

The overwhelming advantages of using iPSCs and lineage conversion to develop models of diseases of the nervous system are that they allow one to study disease mechanisms in the context of human neurons and in the context of each patient's own unique genetic constellation. In many cases, established differentiation protocols allow for the generation of the particular neuronal subtype that is most vulnerable to the particular disease, such as spinal motor neurons (Davis-Dusenbery *et al*, 2014) and dopaminergic neurons (Kriks *et al*, 2011). These neurons can be produced in

1 Department of Stem Cells and Regenerative Medicine, Eli and Edythe Broad, CIRM Center for Regenerative Medicine and Stem Cell Research at USC, University of Southern California, Los Angeles, CA, USA
2 The Ken and Ruth Davee Department of Neurology & Clinical Neurological Sciences and Department of Physiology, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA
*Corresponding author. Tel: +617 271 7366; E-mail: ichida@usc.edu
**Corresponding author. Tel: +312 503 6039; E-mail: evangelos.kiskinis@northwestern.edu

abundance from variable genetic backgrounds and could provide useful platforms for drug discovery.

The concept of using iPSCs and lineage conversion to study neurological disease appears straightforward: Both of these approaches allow for the generation of patient-specific neurons, which are relevant to the disease of interest, and when these are compared to neurons generated from healthy controls, any differences identified could be related to the disease. In practice, this approach has been proven to be more challenging than initially believed. What is the right cell type to make and study? How should quality control of neurons be performed? What are the right controls to use when assessing a disease-related phenotype? How do phenotypes identified *in vitro* relate to the clinical presentation of patients? These are just some of the questions that the community has struggled with, since the initial description of iPSCs and the onset of the development of *in vitro* patient-specific disease models. Perhaps the seemingly biggest advantage of this approach —the ability to study disease in the genetic background of the patient—has created the biggest challenge, as genetic background contributes to high variability in the properties of the patient-derived cells. This variability is a reality that neurologists have been facing for years, as often, two patients diagnosed with the same condition might present with very different clinical profiles. The technology of cellular reprogramming has brought this reality of clinical heterogeneity seen in patients from the bedside to the lab bench.

Since the initial description of reprogramming technologies, neuroscientists, neurologists and stem cell researchers have generated and characterized hundreds of patient-specific stem cell lines as well as neuronal cells derived from them (Table 1). The first "wave" of disease modeling studies focused on generating patient-specific human neurons and confirming previously described pathologies (Dimos *et al*, 2008; Ebert *et al*, 2009; Marchetto *et al*, 2010; Brennand *et al*, 2011; Seibler *et al*, 2011; Bilican *et al*, 2012; Israel *et al*, 2012). More recent studies have revealed novel insights into disease mechanisms and employed gene editing approaches to clearly demonstrate the association of identified phenotypes with known genetic variants that contribute to disease (An *et al*, 2012; Corti *et al*, 2012; Fong *et al*, 2013; Reinhardt *et al*, 2013; Kiskinis *et al*, 2014; Wainger *et al*, 2014; Wen *et al*, 2014b). At the same time, there has been tremendous progress in our ability to generate neuronal subtypes both via directed differentiation and through the exogenous expression of transcription factors. Here, we review the current state of disease modeling and neuronal differentiation approaches, highlight breakthrough studies and discuss the shift in focus that is expected over the next few years.

You can study only what you can make

With an eye on modeling neurological disease, stem cell scientists have steadily developed protocols for generating relevant human neural subtypes *in vitro* (Fig 1 and Table 2). Many directed differentiation and lineage conversion studies have focused on cell types that are selectively vulnerable in neurodegenerative or neurological diseases such as spinal motor neurons (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, ALS), midbrain dopaminergic neurons (Parkinson's disease, PD) and striatal medium spiny neurons (Huntington's disease, HD). Their selective vulnerability in patients provides confidence that the phenotypes identified in iPSC-derived or lineage-converted cells *in vitro* represent relevant disease processes. In addition, it provides the opportunity to sift out phenotypes that may be disease non-relevant by using neuronal subtypes that are not affected *in vivo* as negative controls.

One important area requiring further development of *in vitro* protocols is region-specific cortical differentiation. Many diseases affect specific regions of the cortex, such as frontotemporal dementia (FTD), which affects the anterior cingulate, orbitofrontal cortex, and temporal lobes, or ALS, which affects layer V neurons in the motor cortex. Thus, region-specific attributes play a large role in the disease vulnerability of neuronal subtypes. While protocols exist to generate neurons from both deep and upper layers of the cortex (Shi *et al*, 2012b; Kadoshima *et al*, 2013), they have not shown to be specific for a given region of the cortex. The identification of marker genes and neuronal projection patterns specific to neurons in different cortical regions will greatly facilitate the development and validation of region-specific cortical neuron protocols.

Adult neural stem cells of the dentate gyrus play a key role in memory formation and pattern separation tasks and could be an important therapeutic target for Alzheimer's disease (AD). Although it is possible to generate human neural stem or progenitor cells *in vitro*, these are likely more embryonic and it is not clear how closely these mimic adult stem cells of the dentate gyrus (Chambers *et al*, 2009, 2011; Shi *et al*, 2012a,b). One reason is that until recently, rigorous molecular characterization of these cells was missing. We are now starting to get a clearer picture. There seem to be several adult neural stem cell populations or states that can be distinguished by markers such as Ascl1 or Gli1, and single-cell RNA sequencing data have been generated (Bonaguidi *et al*, 2011). This new information will serve as a template for generating adult neural stem cells *in vitro*.

A third cell type that has not been produced on a patient-specific level *in vitro* is microglia. Microglia perform inflammatory and non-inflammatory tasks that enable normal neuronal function. Through these roles, they are known to regulate the progression of ALS and AD (Zhong *et al*, 2009; de Boer *et al*, 2014; Johansson *et al*, 2015), and potentially other neurodegenerative diseases. Mouse studies showed that microglia from *SOD1*G93A ALS mice express higher levels of the prostaglandin E2 receptor (Di Giorgio *et al*, 2008; de Boer *et al*, 2014). Similarly, microglia from an AD model sharply upregulate the prostaglandin E2 receptor in response to amyloid-β (Ab) exposure in an age-dependent manner (Johansson *et al*, 2015). Higher prostaglandin E2 signaling in microglia caused reduced microglial cytokine generation, chemotaxis, clearance of Aboligomers, resolution of inflammatory responses to Ab_{42} and trophic factor release (Johansson *et al*, 2015). In both the ALS and AD models, deletion of the prostaglandin E2 receptor significantly slowed disease progression (de Boer *et al*, 2014; Johansson *et al*, 2015). Under normal conditions, microglia are derived from the embryonic yolk sac and go through a maturation process after they enter the nervous system (Nayak *et al*, 2014). The signaling and gene expression changes that occur during this process are not well understood and will need to be characterized further to enable the production of patient-specific microglia.

Table 1. List of published studies modeling human neurological diseases with iPSCs.

Disease	References	Patient genotype	Cell type analyzed	Identified phenotype	Notable
Alzheimer's Disease	Yagi *et al* (2011)	*PSEN1, PSEN2* mutations	Neurons	Increased amyloid β42 secretion	
Alzheimer's Disease	Israel *et al* (2012)	*APP* mutations, sporadic cases	Neurons	Increased amyloid β40, Tau and GSK3β phosphorylation, accumulation of endosomes	One of two sporadic patients exhibited phenotypes
Alzheimer's Disease	Kondo *et al* (2013)	*APP* mutations, sporadic cases	Cortical neurons, astrocytes	Accumulated Aβ oligomers, ER & oxidative stress	One of two sporadic patients exhibited phenotypes
Alzheimer's Disease	Muratore *et al* (2014)	*APP* mutation	Forebrain neuron	Increase in Aβ42, Aβ38, pTAU	Aβ-antibodies reduce pTAU
Alzheimer's Disease	Sproul *et al* (2014)	*PSEN1* mutation	Neural progenitors	Higher Aβ42/Aβ40 ratio, gene expression differences	Verification of gene expression differences in human AD brains
Alzheimer's Disease	Duan *et al* (2014)	Sporadic *ApoE3/E4*	Basal forebrain cholinergic neurons	Higher Aβ42/Aβ40 ratio, increased vulnerability to glutamate-stress	
Alzheimer's Disease	Hossini *et al* (2015)	Sporadic	Neurons	Gene expression analysis	
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Dimos *et al* (2008)	*SOD1* mutations	Motor neurons	N.D.	First report of patient-specific neurons
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Mitne-Neto *et al* (2011)	*VAPB* mutations	Fibroblasts, iPSCs, motor neurons	Reduced VAPB protein levels	Although VAPB levels were highest in neurons, the reduction was not specific to neurons
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Bilican *et al* (2012)	*TDP43* mutations	Motor neurons	Cell death	Real-time survival analysis of $HB9^{+}$ neurons
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Egawa *et al* (2012)	*TDP43* mutations	Motor neurons	Expression differences, TDP43 pathology, shorter neurites	Rescue by anacardic acid, multiple clones per patient used
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Sareen *et al* (2013)	*C9orf72* expansion	Motor neurons	RNA foci, hypoexcitability, gene expression differences	Repeat-containing RNA foci colocalized with hnRNPA1 and Pur-α, rescue of gene expression by ASO treatment
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Donnelly *et al* (2013)	*C9orf72* expansion	Neurons	RNA foci, irregular interaction with ADARB2, susceptibility to glutamate excitotoxicity	Colocalization of repeat with ADARB2 validated in patient motor cortex. Rescue of gene expression by ASO treatment
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Yang *et al* (2013b)	*SOD1, TDP43* mutations	Motor neurons	Sensitivity to growth factor withdrawal	Rescue by kenpaullone
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Serio *et al* (2013)	*TDP43* mutations	Astrocytes	Cell death, TDP43 mislocalization	
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Wainger *et al* (2014)	*SOD1, C9orf72, FUS* mutations	Motor neurons	Hyperexcitability	Phenotype rescued by gene correction in *SOD1*, and by treatment with a Kv7 agonist
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Kiskinis *et al* (2014)	*SOD1, C9orf72* mutations	Motor neurons	Cell death, reduced soma size, ER stress, mitochondrial abnormalities, gene expression changes	Phenotypes rescued by gene correction in *SOD1*

Table 1 (continued)

Disease	References	Patient genotype	Cell type analyzed	Identified phenotype	Notable
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Chen *et al* (2014)	*SOD1* mutations	Motor neurons	Neurofilament aggregation, cell death	Phenotype rescued by gene correction
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Barmada *et al* (2014)	*TDP43* mutations	Neurons, astrocytes	Sensitivity to TDP43 accumulation	Autophagy stimulation increases survival
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (ALS)	Devlin *et al* (2015)	*TDP43* and *C9orf72* mutants	Neurons	Electrophysiological dysfunction	Hyperexcitability followed by loss of action potential output
Angelman & Prader–Willi Syndrome	Chamberlain *et al* (2010)	*15q11-q13* deletions	Neurons	*UBE3A* expression	Genomic imprint is maintained in iPSC neurons
Ataxia Telangiectasia	Lee *et al* (2013)	*ATM* mutations	NPCs & neurons	Defective DNA damage response	SMRT compounds rescue phenotype
Best Disease	Singh *et al* (2013)	*BEST1* mutations	RPE cells	Delayed RHODOPSIN degradation, defective Ca^{2+} responses, oxidative stress	
Dravet Syndrome	Higurashi *et al* (2013)	*SCN1A* mutation	Neurons (mostly $GABA^{+}$)	Reduced AP firing	
Dravet Syndrome	Liu *et al* (2013b)	*SCN1A* mutation	Neurons (GABA & $Glutamate^{+}$)	Increase Na^{+} current density, altered excitability	
Dravet Syndrome	Jiao *et al* (2013)	*SCN1A* mutation	Neurons	Abnormal Na^{+} currents, increased firing	
Familial Dysautonomia	Lee *et al* (2009)	*IKBKAP* mutation	Peripheral neurons, neural crest precursors	Mis-splicing & *IKBKAP* expression, neurogenesis & migration defects	Phenotypes are tissue specific
Familial Dysautonomia	Lee *et al* (2012)	*IKBKAP* mutation	Neural crest precursors	*IKBKAP* expression levels	First large-scale drug screening approach, first follow-up study
Fragile X Syndrome	Sheridan *et al* (2011)	*FMR1* expansion	NPCs & neurons	*FMR1* promoter methylation & reduced expression, reduced length of processes	
Fragile X Syndrome	Liu *et al* (2012b)	*FMR1* expansion	Neurons	Decreased PSD95 expression & density, neurite length, electrophysiological defects	
Fragile X Syndrome	Doers *et al* (2014)	*FMR1* expansion	Neurons	Neurite extension & initiation defects	
Friedreich's Ataxia	Liu *et al* (2011)	*FXN* expansion	Peripheral neurons, cardiomyocytes	*FXN* expression, repeat instability	
Friedreich's Ataxia	Hick *et al* (2013)	*FXN* expansion	Neurons, cardiomyocytes	*FXN* expression, mitochondrial dysfunction	
Friedreich's Ataxia	Eigentler *et al* (2013)	*FXN* expansion	Peripheral neurons	*FXN* expression	
Frontotemporal Dementia	Almeida *et al* (2013)	*C9orf72* expansion	Neurons	RNA foci, RAN products, sensitivity to autophagy inhibitors	
Frontotemporal Dementia (Bv)	Gascon *et al* (2014)	Sporadic patients	Neurons	Alterations in miR-124 & AMPAR levels	Confirmation of mouse model findings in iPSC neurons & patients
Frontotemporal Dementia	Raitano *et al* (2015)	PGRN mutation	Cortical & motor neurons	Cortical differentiation defects	Rescue by PGRN expression

Table 1 (continued)

Disease	References	Patient genotype	Cell type analyzed	Identified phenotype	Notable
Gaucher's Disease	Mazzulli *et al* (2011)	*GBA1* mutations	Dopaminergic neurons	Declined proteolysis, increased α-synuclein	Provides links between GD & PD
Gaucher's Disease	Tiscornia *et al* (2013)	*GBA1* mutations	Neurons & macrophages	Reduction in acid-β-glucosidase activity	Identification of two small molecules
Gyrate Atrophy	Meyer *et al* (2011)	*OAT* mutation	RPE cells	Decreased OAT activity	Rescued by BAC-mediated introduction of *OAT*
Hereditary Spastic Paraplegia	Denton *et al* (2014)	*SPAST* mutation	Glutamatergic neurons	Axonal swelling, increased levels of acetylated tubulin	
Hereditary Spastic Paraplegia	Zhu *et al* (2014)	*ATL1* mutation	Forebrain neurons	Impaired axonal growth, defects in mitochondrial motility	
Huntington's Disease	Camnasio *et al* (2012)	*HTT* expansion	Neurons	Altered lysosomal activity	
Huntington's Disease	Juopperi *et al* (2012)	*HTT* expansion	Astrocytes	Cytoplasmic vacuolization	
Huntington's Disease	HD Consortium (2012)	*HTT* expansion	NPCs & $GABA^+$ neurons	Altered gene expression, morphological alterations, survival deficit, sensitivity to stressors	Correlation between repeat length & vulnerability to cell stress
Huntington's Disease	An *et al* (2012)	*HTT* expansion	NPCs, neurons	Cell death, gene expression, mitochondrial dysfunction	Genetic correction rescued phenotypes
Huntington's Disease	Guo *et al* (2013)	*HTT* expansion	Neurons ($GABA^+$)	Mitochondrial damage	
Huntington's Disease	Yao *et al* (2015)	*HTT* expansion	Striatal neurons	Cell death, caspase-3 activation	Identified Gpr52 as a stabilizer of HTT
Lesch–Nyhan Syndrome	Mekhoubad *et al* (2012)	*HPRT1* mutation	Neurons	Neuronal differentiation efficiency and neurite number defects	Demonstrate that X-inactivation erodes in culture & could affects modeling of X-linked disease
Microcephaly	Lancaster *et al* (2013)	*CDK5RAP2* mutation	Cerebral organoids	Smaller neuroepithelial regions & RGs, premature neurogenesis, RG spindle disarray	Generated 3-dimensional brain structures
Neuronal ceroid lipofuscinosis	Lojewski *et al* (2014)	*CNL2, CNL3* mutations	NPCs, neurons	Morphological abnormalities in ER, Golgi, mitochondria & lysosomes	Rescue by expression of NCL proteins
Niemann–Pick type C1 disease	Trilck *et al* (2013)	*NPC1* mutation	NPCs & neurons	Accumulation of cholesterol	
Parkinson's Disease	Byers *et al* (2011)	*SCNA* triplication	Dopaminergic neurons	Oxidative stress, α-synuclein accumulation	
Parkinson's Disease	Nguyen *et al* (2011)	*LRRK2* mutations	Dopaminergic neurons	Oxidative stress, α-synuclein accumulation, sensitivity to stress reagents	
Parkinson's Disease	Seibler *et al* (2011)	*PINK1* mutations	Dopaminergic neurons	Increased mitochondrial copy number, PGC1a upregulation	Rescue by *PINK1* overexpression
Parkinson's Disease	Devine *et al* (2011)	*SNCA* triplication	Dopaminergic neurons	Upregulation of α-synuclein	

Table 1 (continued)

Disease	References	Patient genotype	Cell type analyzed	Identified phenotype	Notable
Parkinson's Disease	Sanchez-Danes *et al* (2012)	Sporadic & *LRRK2* mutations	Dopaminergic neurons	Reduction in neurite number & density, vacuolization, sensitivity to lysosomal inhibition	A total of 15 patients examined, long-term culture ~75 DIV
Parkinson's Disease	Cooper *et al* (2012)	*PINK1* & *LRRK2* mutations	Dopaminergic neurons	Mitochondrial dysfunction in response to stressors	Pharmacological rescue of phenotypes
Parkinson's Disease	Imaizumi *et al* (2012)	*PARK2* mutations	Dopaminergic neurons	Oxidative stress, mitochondrial dysfunction, Nrf2 induction, α-synuclein accumulation	
Parkinson's Disease	Liu *et al* (2012a)	*LRRK2* mutation	Neural stem cells	Susceptibility to proteosomal stress, differentiation & clonal expansion deficiencies	Genetic correction rescued phenotypes
Parkinson's Disease	Reinhardt *et al* (2013)	*LRRK2* mutation	Dopaminergic neurons	Gene expression differences, ERK phosphorylation & activity	Genetic correction rescued phenotypes
Parkinson's Disease	Su and Qi (2013)	*LRRK2* mutation	Dopaminergic neurons	Mitochondrial damage, shorter neuritis, lysosomal hyperactivity	Pharmacological rescue
Parkinson's Disease	Chung *et al* (2013)	*SNCA* mutation	Cortical neurons	Nitrosative & ER stress	Pharmacological rescue, combination between a yeast and an iPSC platform
Parkinson's Disease	Miller *et al* (2013)	*PINK1* & *PARKIN* mutations	Dopaminergic neurons	TH reduction, dendritic degeneration	Phenotypes induced only after overexpressing progerin
Parkinson's Disease	Ryan *et al* (2013)	*SNCA* mutation	Dopaminergic neurons	Nitrosative stress, gene expression alterations, mitochondrial stress	Genetic & pharmacological rescue of phenotypes
Parkinson's Disease	Flierl *et al* (2014)	*SNCA* triplication	NPCs	Viability, metabolism & stress resistance defects	Rescue by *SNCA* knockdown
Parkinson's Disease	Sanders *et al* (2014)	*LRRK2* mutations	NPCs & neurons	Mitochondrial DNA damage	Genetic correction rescued phenotypes
Phelan–McDermid Syndrome	Shcheglovitov *et al* (2013)	22q13.3 deletion	Forebrain neurons	Defective excitatory synaptic transmission	Rescue by *SHANK3* expression or IGF1 treatment
Retinitis Pigmentosa	Jin *et al* (2011)	*RP1, RP9, PRPH2, RHO* mutations	Rod photoreceptors	Cell death, oxidative & ER stress	Differential response to treatment with α-Tocopherol
Retinitis Pigmentosa	Tucker *et al* (2011)	MAK mutations	Retinal precursors	Defective *MAK* mRNA splicing	
Retinitis Pigmentosa	Jin *et al* (2012)	*RHO* mutations	RPE cells	Cell death & ER stress	
Retinitis Pigmentosa	Tucker *et al* (2013)	*USH2A* mutations	Retinal precursors	*USH2A* transcript defects, ER stress	
Rett Syndrome	Marchetto *et al* (2010)	*MeCP2* mutations	Neurons	*MeCP2* expression, reduced synapses, spine density, soma size, altered calcium signaling	
Rett Syndrome	Ananiev *et al* (2011)	*MeCP2* mutations	Neurons	Reduced nuclear size	
Rett Syndrome	Cheung *et al* (2011)	*MeCP2* deletion	Neurons	*MeCP2* expression, reduced soma size	

Table 1 (continued)

Disease	References	Patient genotype	Cell type analyzed	Identified phenotype	Notable
Rett Syndrome	Kim *et al* (2011c)	*MeCP2* mutations	Neurons	Lower TUJ1 & Na^+ channel expression	
Rett Syndrome	Amenduni *et al* (2011)	*CDKL5* mutations	Neurons	No phenotype described	
Rett Syndrome	Ricciardi *et al* (2012)	*CDKL5* mutations	Neurons	Aberrant dendritic spines	
Rett Syndrome	Larimore *et al* (2013)	*MeCP2* mutations	Neurons	Reduced expression of *PLDN*	
Rett Syndrome	Griesi-Oliveira *et al* (2014)	*TRPC6* mutation	NPCs & cortical neurons	Gene expression differences, Ca^{2+} influx defects, decreased axonal length & arborization	Overlap in molecular pathways between *TRPC6 & MeCPT2*
Rett Syndrome	Williams *et al* (2014)	*MeCP2* mutations	Astrocytes	Mutant astrocytes cause morphological and firing defects in healthy neurons	Demonstrates non-cell autonomous contribution of astrocytes in Rett Syndrome
Rett Syndrome	Djuric *et al* (2015)	*MeCP2e1* mutation	Cortical neurons	Reduced soma size, dendritic density, capacitance & firing defects	Rescue of phenotypes by overexpression of *MeCP2e1*
Rett Syndrome	Livide *et al* (2015)	*MeCP2* & *CDKL5* mutations	NPCs & neurons	Gene expression differences	Identified *GRID1* as a common target in two distinct genetic classes of RTT
Schizophrenia	Brennand *et al* (2011)	Familial & sporadic SCZD patients	NPCs & neurons	Decreased connectivity, neurite number, PSD95 protein, gene expression changes	Recovery after treatment with loxapine
Schizophrenia	Pedrosa *et al* (2011)	22q11.2 deletion & sporadic SCZD	Glutamatergic neurons	No phenotype described	
Schizophrenia	Paulsen Bda *et al* (2012)	SCZD patient	NPCs	Elevated ROS, extramitochondrial consumption	Treatment with valproic acid reduced ROS
Schizophrenia	Robicsek *et al* (2013)	SCZD patients	NPCs, dopaminergic, glutamatergic neurons	Differentiation & maturation deficiencies, mitochondrial defects	
Schizophrenia	Yoon *et al* (2014)	*15q11.2* microdeletion	NPCs	Deficits in adherent junctions & apical polarity	Identified haploinsufficiency of *CYFIP1* as a potential contributor to neuropsychiatric disorders
Schizophrenia	Hook *et al* (2014)	SCZD patients	Neurons	Increased secretion of catecholamines, higher numbers of TH^+ neurons	
Schizophrenia	Wen *et al* (2014b)	*DISC1* mutations	Forebrain neurons	Synaptic vesicle release deficits, gene expression changes	Isogenic controls included in this study
Schizophrenia	Brennand *et al* (2015)	Familial & sporadic SCZD patients	NPCs & neurons	RNA & protein-level differences related to cytoskeleton & oxidative stress, aberrant migration	
Spinal Muscular Atrophy	Ebert *et al* (2009)	Type 1 *SMA*	Motor neurons	Cell death, soma size, reduced SMN levels	First study of iPSC-based approach to report a disease-associated phenotype

Table 1 (continued)

Disease	References	Patient genotype	Cell type analyzed	Identified phenotype	Notable
Spinal Muscular Atrophy	Sareen *et al* (2012)	Type 1 *SMA*	Motor neurons	Cell death, increased caspase-8 & 3 activation	Rescue by apoptotic inhibitors
Spinal Muscular Atrophy	Corti *et al* (2012)	Type 1 *SMA*	Motor neurons	Cell death, smaller soma size, reduced axonal length, gene expression and RNA splicing defects	Gene correction, transplantation of iPSC motor neurons extends lifespan of SMA mouse model
Tauopathy	Fong *et al* (2013)	*TAU* mutation	Neurons	TAU fragmentation & phosphorylation, axonal degeneration	Gene editing to correct the mutation & generate a homozygous mutant used as controls
Timothy Syndrome	Pasca *et al* (2011)	*CACNA1C* mutations	NPCs & cortical neurons	Ca^{2+} signaling, activity-dependent gene expression	Rescue by roscovitine treatment
Timothy Syndrome	Krey *et al* (2013)	*CACNA1C* mutations	Cortical neurons	Activity-dependent dendrite retraction	Rescue by GTPase Gem

NPCs, neural progenitor cells; RPE, retinal pigment epithelium; ND, not determined; ASO, allele-specific oligonucleotide; GD, Gaucher's disease; PD, Parkinson's disease; AP, action potential.
The table includes neurodevelopmental and neurodegenerative diseases for which patient-specific iPSCs have been generated and neuronal cells differentiated to develop a cell-based model of disease.

Specificity of phenotypes: the importance of controls

Significant technical advancements achieved over that last few years currently allow for the generation of patient-specific iPSCs that are free from genomic integration of the reprogramming factors (Malik & Rao, 2013). The essential quality of any newly derived iPSC can be easily assessed by (i) immunocytochemistry for pluripotency markers (e.g. NANOG/SSEA3), (ii) a quantitative pluripotency assay such as the *Scorecard* or the *Pluritest* and (iii) analysis of genomic integrity (karyotype, array CGH).

Disease modeling studies based on iPSC technology have relied on the use of diseased cells derived from patients as a model for disease, and cells derived from healthy individuals as controls. However, genetic and potentially epigenetic heterogeneity of iPSC lines contributes to functional variability of differentiated somatic cells, confounding evaluation of disease modeling experiments (Sandoe & Eggan, 2013). Such variability can be introduced at multiple different levels including generation of stem cell lines, continuous *in vitro* culture, variation in cell culture reagents, differential efficiencies of neural generation and genetic background. There are different approaches to overcoming this variation. One approach is through the use of targeted gene editing that results in the generation of a control stem cell line that is isogenic to the patient one, except for the disease-causing mutation. Such an approach effectively minimizes line-to-line differences and is a very important tool for iPSC-based disease modeling.

CRISPR/Cas9, a recent technology that has emerged, allows for the efficient generation of such isogenic stem cell lines (Hsu *et al*, 2014). The system contains two essential components, an enzyme that can cleave DNA such that a double-strand break or a single nick is generated and a guide RNA that targets the enzyme to a specific genomic location. By simultaneously introducing either a single-stranded oligodeoxynucleotide (ssODN) containing the desired edit or a targeting plasmid with larger desired sequence alterations, the genomic sequence can be precisely edited via the cells' own endogenous repair mechanism, homologous recombination. Given the incredible versatility of the CRISPR/Cas9 system and the continuous evolvement of the technical aspects of this approach, it should be expected that every iPSC study that focuses on genetic forms of disease should include an isogenic control cell line. The rescue of a phenotype by genetic correction can lead to the conclusion that the genetic lesion is *necessary* for the onset of the phenotype. The same technique can be used to introduce a disease-associated mutation in a healthy iPSC line in order to assess whether the mutation in itself is *sufficient* for the onset of particular phenotypes.

An alternative approach to the concern of variation would be to utilize multiple stem cell clones from each individual patient and compare the desired measurement against multiple healthy individuals. The use of multiple patient clones would ensure that the phenotype is not an artifact of a defective clonal cell line, while the use of multiple healthy controls should encapsulate sufficient technical and genetic variation, so that the measured cellular properties neuronal firing, dendritic density, etc. will represent a true average. This approach will be important in studies of sporadic disease.

Additionally, approaches that are complementary to the iPSC method should also be considered for the verification of identified phenotypes. These could include the generation of neurons via direct conversion as well as the investigation of human patient material such as postmortem CNS tissue and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). Other non-invasive techniques such as transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS) (Fox *et al*, 2014), which allows *in vivo* neurostimulation and neuromodulation, and an electroencephalogram (EGG), can also be used to examine changes associated with electrical excitability of neurons.

An important point to consider when assessing the specificity of an identified phenotype is whether it is only apparent in the cell type known to be most vulnerable to the disease being modeled. In

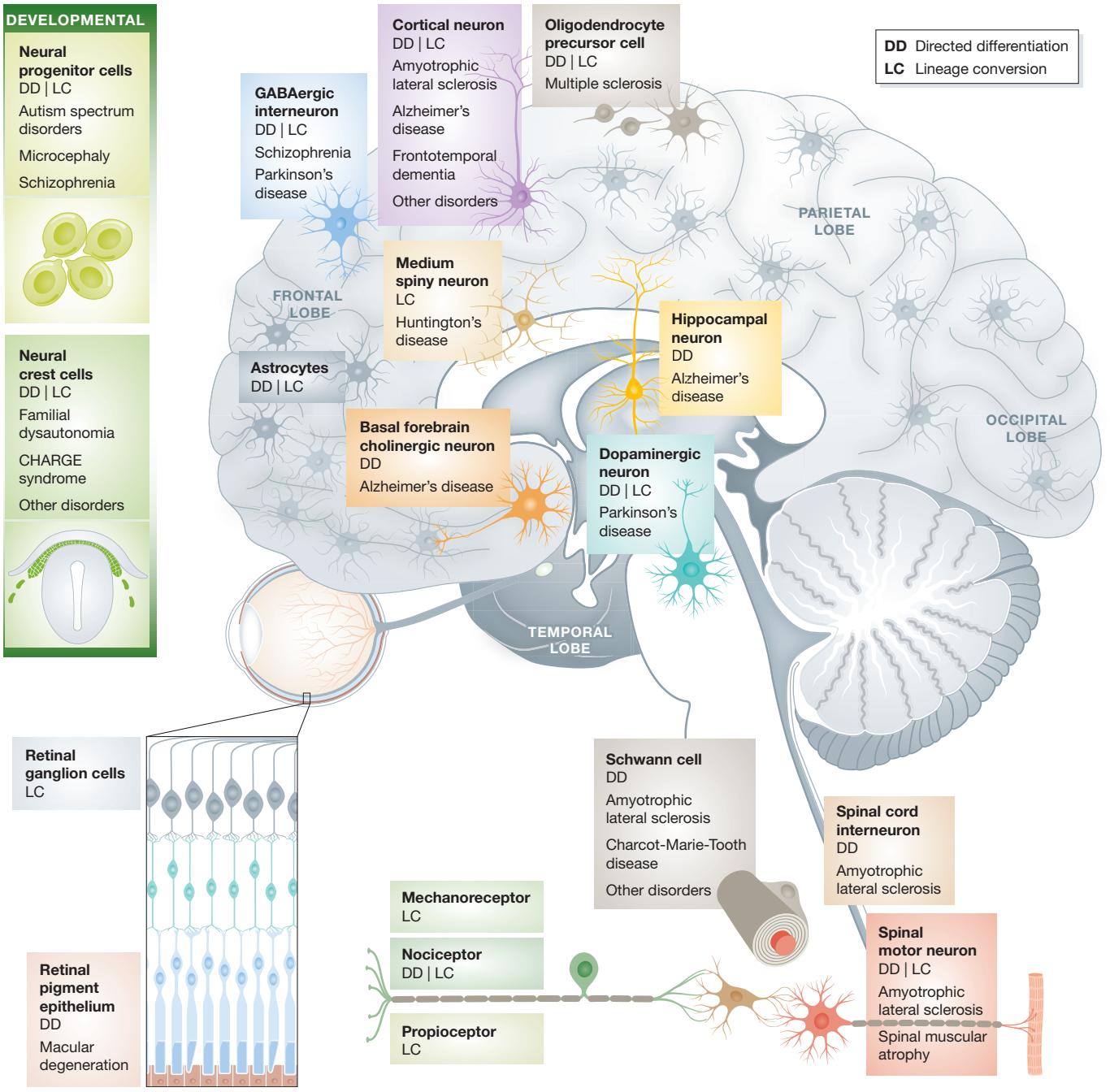


Figure 1. You can model only what you can make.
A number of different human neural cells can be efficiently generated by directed differentiation (DD) from pluripotent stem cells, or by lineage conversion (LC) from somatic cell types.

ALS patients for example, it is the upper and lower motor neurons that are initially targeted by disease mechanisms and gradually lost, while sensory neurons remain relatively unaffected. It would therefore be predicted that a phenotype that is truly relevant to disease would not be evident in a sensory neuron generated from the same individual. Although this could be a valuable approach, it should be taken with caution for two reasons: firstly because a sensory neuron might simply be resistant to a phenotype, and therefore, it is the effect of the phenotype on the sensory cell that should be considered and not simply the presence of the phenotype in itself, and secondly because it might be the *in vivo* microenvironment of a sensory neuron that confers resistance and not a cell autonomous trait. Nevertheless, studies have demonstrated neuronal-type specificity of a phenotype including the sensitivity of mutant PD tyrosine hydroxylase (TH)-positive neurons but not TH-negative neurons to H_2O_2-induced toxicity (Nguyen *et al*, 2011), and morphometric

Table 2. List of neural cells generated by directed differentiation of stem cells and lineage conversion of somatic cells.

Initial cell population	Target cell type	Morphogens/Small molecules	Reprogramming factors	References
Lineage conversion				
Fibroblasts	Neural crest cells		SOX10	Kim *et al* (2011a)
Fibroblasts	Neural stem cells		SOX2	Ring *et al* (2012)
Fibroblasts	Neurons	CHIR99021, SB431542	ASCL1, NGN2	Ladewig *et al* (2012)
Fibroblasts	Neurons		ASCL1	Chanda *et al* (2014)
Pericyte-derived cells	Neurons		SOX2, ASCL1	Karow *et al* (2012)
Fibroblasts	Dopaminergic neurons		ASCL1, BRN2, MYT1L, LMX1A, FOXA2	Pfisterer *et al* (2011)
Fibroblasts	Dopaminergic neurons		ASCL1, LMX1A, NURRL	Caiazzo *et al* (2011)
Fibroblasts	Dopaminergic neurons		Lmx1a, Foxa2, Ascl1, Brn2	Sheng *et al* (2012a)
Fibroblasts	Dopaminergic neurons		Ascl1, Pitx3, Lmx1a, Nurr1, Foxa2, EN1	Kim *et al* (2011b)
Fibroblasts	Dopaminergic neurons		ASCL1, NGN2, SOX2, NURR1, PITX3	Liu *et al* (2012c)
Fibroblasts	Glutamatergic Neurons		ASCL1, BRN2, MYT1L, NEUROD1	Pang *et al* (2011)
Fibroblasts	Glutamatergic neurons		BRN2, MYT1L, miR-124	Ambasudhan *et al* (2011)
Fibroblasts	Glutamatergic neurons	Forskolin, Dorsomorphin	NGN2	Liu *et al* (2013a)
Fibroblasts	Glutamatergic and GABAergic neurons		ASCL1, MYT1L, NEUROD2, miR-9/9*, miR-124	Yoo *et al* (2011)
Fibroblasts	Medium spiny neurons		DLX1, DLX2, MYT1L, CTIP2, miR-9/9*, miR-124	Victor *et al* (2014)
Fibroblasts	Nociceptor, mechanoreceptor, proprioceptor neurons	Brn3a, Ngn1/2		Blanchard *et al* (2015)
Fibroblasts	Nociceptor Neurons	ASCL1, MYT1L, ISL2, KLF7, NGN1		Wainger *et al* (2015)
Fibroblasts	Oligodendrocyte progenitor cells		Sox10, Olig2, Zfp536	Yang *et al* (2013a)
Fibroblasts	Oligodendrocyte progenitor cells		Olig1, Olig2, Nkx2.2, Nkx6.2, Sox10, ST18, Gm98, Myt1	Najm *et al* (2013)
Fibroblasts	Spinal motor neurons		ASCL1, BRN2, MYT1L, NGN2, ISL1, LHX3, NEUROD1	Son *et al* (2011)
Fibroblasts	Astrocytes		Nfia, Nfib, Sox9	Caiazzo *et al* (2015)
Fibroblasts	Neural precursor cells		Brn2, Sox2, FoxG1	Lujan *et al* (2012)
Fibroblasts	Neural progenitor cells	VPA, CHIR99021, RepSox		Cheng *et al* (2014)
Fibroblasts	Neural stem cells		Brn4, Sox2, Klf4, c-Myc, E47	Han *et al* (2012)
Fibroblasts	Neural stem cells		Sox2, Klf4,c-Myc, Oct4	Thier *et al* (2012)
Sertoli cells	Neural stem cells		Ascl1, Ngn2, Hes1, Id1, Pax6, Brn2, Sox2, c-Myc, Klf4	Sheng *et al* (2012b)
Astrocytes	Neuroblasts		Sox2	Niu *et al* (2013)
Hepatocytes	Neurons		Ascl1, Brn2, Myt1l	Marro *et al* (2011)
Fibroblasts	Neurons		PTB repression	Xue *et al* (2013)
Astrocytes	GABAergic neurons		Ascl1, Dlx2	Heinrich *et al* (2010)
Directed differentiation				
Pluripotent stem cells	Forebrain neuronal precursors	SB431542, LDN189193, N2, B27		Chambers *et al* (2009)

Table 2 (continued)

Initial cell population	Target cell type	Morphogens/Small molecules	Reprogramming factors	References
Pluripotent stem cells	Forebrain neurons	SB431542, LDN189193, N2, B27		Chambers *et al* (2009)
Pluripotent stem cells	Telencephalic neurons	N2, B27, IGF1, Heparin, SHH, DKK1, WNT3A, BDNF, GDNF		Li *et al* (2009)
Pluripotent stem cells	Forebrain neural cells	Heparin, N2, B27, BDNF, GDNF, IGF1		Zeng *et al* (2010)
Pluripotent stem cells	Cortical neurons	B27, N2, BSA, sodium pyruvate, 2-mercaptoethanol, Noggin, Y27632		Espuny-Camacho *et al* (2013)
Pluripotent stem cells	Granule cerebellar neurons	FGF2, heparin, N2, Glutamax, FGF8, retinoic acid, ITS, FGF4, WNT1, WNT3A, B27, BMP7, BMP6, GDF7, SHH, NT3, JAG1		Erceg *et al* (2012)
Pluripotent stem cells	Hypothalamic neurons	Neurobasal-A, Glutamax, N2, B27, sodium bicarbonate, dibutyryl cyclic AMP, GDNF, BDNF, CNTF		Merkle *et al* (2015)
Pluripotent stem cells	Dopaminergic neurons	Heparin, N2, serum replacer, cAMP, ascorbic acid, BDNF, GDNF, SHH, FGF8		Yan *et al* (2005)
Pluripotent stem cells	Dopaminergic neurons	LDN193189, SB431542, SHH C25II, purmorphamine, FGF8, CHIR99021, N2, B27, L-Glut, BDNF, ascorbic acid, GDNF, TGFβ3, dibutyryl cAMP, DAPT		Kriks *et al* (2011)
Pluripotent stem cells	Spinal motor neurons	SB431542, LDN189193, N2, B27, retinoic acid, smoothened agonist		Amoroso *et al* (2013)
Pluripotent stem cells	Astrocytes	B27, BMP2, BMP4, LIF		Gupta *et al* (2012)
Pluripotent stem cells	Astrocytes	EGF, FGF, Glutamax, N2, CNTF		Krencik and Zhang (2011)
Pluripotent stem cells	Oligodendrocytes	N2, N1, cAMP, biotin, heparin, retinoic acid, SHH, purmorphamine, FGF2, B27, PDGF, IGF, NT3		Hu *et al* (2009)
Pluripotent stem cells	Hippocampal neurons	DKK1, SB431542, Noggin, cyclopamine, N2, B27, Wnt3a, BDNF, FGF2, ascorbic acid, cyclic AMP, fetal bovine serum		Yu *et al* (2014)
Pluripotent stem cells	Astrocytes (ventralized)	SB431542, LDN189193, RA, SHH, N2, B27, FGF1, FGF2		Roybon *et al* (2013)
Pluripotent stem cells	Basal forebrain cholinergic neurons	RA/SSH/FGF8/BMP9	*Lhx8* & *Gbx1*	Bissonnette *et al* (2011)
Pluripotent stem cells	Cortical interneurons	SB431542, LDN189193, XAV939, SHH, purmorphamine, N2, B27		Maroof *et al* (2013)

deficiencies of mutant ALS, ISL-positive motor neurons but not ISL-negative neurons grown in the same culture dishes (Kiskinis *et al*, 2014).

A major advantage of using reprogramming approaches to study a neurological disease is the ability to assess the biological variation associated with a specific neuronal defect. Consider that a

phenotype, for example, defective lysosomal function, has been identified in neurons derived from a patient cell line and that this phenotype is mutation dependent (i.e. it is corrected in an isogenic control line). The first level of biological variation can be addressed by examining neurons derived from a different individual that harbors the exact same mutation in the same gene. If the phenotype is not present, then additional genetic or epigenetic factors might be necessary for the onset of the defect. The next level of biological variability can be addressed by examining neurons from a patient with a different mutation in the same gene. Lastly, the broader relevance of the identified phenotype for the disease can be assessed by examining the lysosomal function of neurons from patients with mutations in different disease-causing genes as well as in a large number of sporadic cases.

A more direct route to the CNS?

Lineage conversion provides a progenitor-free approach for generating various neural types. Lineage conversion relies on the overexpression of transcription factors to internally drive differentiation programs. The forced expression of these factors replaces external developmental morphogens utilized in iPSC differentiation by directly activating downstream genes. Additionally, either purified external cues or other cell types normally present *in vivo* are sometimes added to further guide the developmental trajectory and maturation of various cell types (Son *et al*, 2011; Meyer *et al*, 2014).

An advantage of this approach is that it simplifies the identification of protocols for generating new neural subtypes because it only requires knowledge of transcription factor expression during the terminal stages of development, as opposed to requiring a deep understanding of morphogen signaling dynamics starting from the pluripotent state through the terminally differentiated state. In the same way that identifying the signals that produce the target cell type is simpler for lineage conversion, optimizing the efficiency of their production is more complicated for iPSC-directed differentiation because one must optimize the efficiency of each progenitor step as opposed to one step as in lineage conversion. Due to these advantages, reprogramming biologists have rapidly developed lineage conversion protocols for almost all neural subtypes attainable by directed differentiation just a few years after the initial demonstration of iPSC reprogramming (Takahashi *et al*, 2007), which showed that dramatic changes in cell fate are possible (see Fig 1).

Several groups have taken advantage of the modular nature of transcriptional networks to generate distinct neuronal subtypes. Genetic neuralization through introduction of *BRN2*, *ASCL1* and *MYT1L* (BAM) to fibroblasts generates induced neurons (iN; Pang *et al*, 2011). The transcription factor *ASCL1* is sufficient in generating iNeurons alone, indicating that it is the key driver in this reprogramming approach (Chanda *et al*, 2014). The addition of *NEUROD1* further enhances this conversion (Pang *et al*, 2011). From iNs, a secondary layer of transcription factors guide cells to particular neurons. Spinal motor neurons have been generated by adding *ISL1*, *LHX3*, *NGN2* and *HB9* to the BAM factors (Son *et al*, 2011). Addition of *LMX1A* and *FOXA2* to the BAM cocktail results in dopaminergic neurons (Pfisterer *et al*, 2011). Striatal medium spiny neurons can be generated using a microRNA-based neuralization platform (Yoo *et al*, 2011) supplemented with *CTIP2, DLX1, DLX3* and *MYT1L* (Victor *et al*, 2014). Neuronal induction has also been achieved through the repression of polypyrimidine tract binding (PTB), a single RNA binding protein (Xue *et al*, 2013). Oligodendrocyte precursor cells follow a separate glial lineage that is independent of BAM-mediated neuralization. Induced oligodendrocyte precursor cells can be made by overexpressing either *SOX10*, *OLIG2* and *ZFP536* (Yang *et al*, 2013a) or *OLIG1*, *OLIG2*, *NKX2.2*, *NKX6.2*, *SOX10*, *ST18*, *GM98* and *MYT1* (Najm *et al*, 2013). Just like in iPSC differentiation, inductive signals are added during lineage conversion protocols to further guide cells to mature fates.

During development, early neural progenitors produce neurons whereas late progenitors differentiate into astrocytes (Stiles & Jernigan, 2010). iPSC-directed differentiation recapitulates this developmental process. As a result, while the production of neurons from human iPSCs occurs within 30 days, astrocytes only emerge after 3 months (Krencik & Zhang, 2011). Recently, Broccoli and colleagues reported that three transcription factors, *NFIA*, *NFIB* and *SOX9,* convert fibroblasts into astrocytes (Caiazzo *et al*, 2015). A major advantage of this approach is that it requires < 3 weeks to generate functional astrocytes (Caiazzo *et al*, 2015).

The key consideration in evaluating the utility of lineage-converted cells is how similar they are to their primary counterparts and whether they reliably recapitulate disease phenotypes. We and others have shown that lineage-converted cells such as motor neurons (Son *et al*, 2011), dopaminergic neurons (Kim *et al*, 2011b) and pancreatic beta cells (Zhou *et al*, 2008; Li *et al*, 2014) express transcriptional profiles and DNA methylation patterns (Li *et al*, 2014) very similar to their primary targets. Although bulk analysis of lineage-converted cultures suggested that these cells retained more residual gene expression from the starting somatic cells than iPSC-derived cells (Cahan *et al*, 2014), single-cell studies suggest that this reflects heterogeneous cultures of converted and non-converted cells rather than "confused" or mixed-property cells (Li *et al*, 2014). Detailed epigenetic and single-cell analysis for more lineage-converted cell types will be required to rigorously assess the quality of these cells.

Recent studies have shown that lineage-converted cells are able to recapitulate disease phenotypes and provide insight into pathogenic mechanisms. Induced motor neurons derived from patients with *C9orf72* ALS degenerated rapidly in cell culture relative to control neurons (Wen *et al*, 2014a). In addition, they expressed dipeptide repeat proteins specific to the *C9orf72* form of the disease, indicating that they reproduce the phenotypes observed *in vivo* (Wen *et al*, 2014a). The authors used this model to determine that dipeptide repeat proteins induce toxicity in *C9orf72* ALS (Wen *et al*, 2014a). Meyer and colleagues used lineage conversion to generate astrocytes from sporadic ALS patients (Meyer *et al*, 2014). Astrocytes from the familial *SOD1* form of the disease induce the degeneration of motor neurons (Di Giorgio *et al*, 2008; Marchetto *et al*, 2008; Meyer *et al*, 2014), and the authors used this approach to assess the neurotoxicity of sporadic ALS patient astrocytes. They found that lineage-converted astrocytes from sporadic ALS patients consistently induced neurodegeneration, suggesting that an inherent disease mechanism is maintained in most sporadic patients. These studies demonstrate that lineage-converted cells are effective tools for studying CNS diseases.

Which approach would be better for disease modeling experiments—lineage conversion or iPSC-directed differentiation? It depends on several considerations. Has the disease affected cell type been generated *in vitro* previously? If not, how much is known about their developmental signaling or transcriptional profile? This would dictate which approach would be more effective to pursue. If both developmental signaling and transcriptional profiling are known, then lineage conversion might be a faster route to disease studies.

How many cells are required for the designed study? If a large number of cells are needed, for example for biochemical or epigenetic studies, iPSC-directed differentiation would be more suitable because the number of differentiated cells gets amplified at each progenitor step, whereas lineage conversion does not amplify the number of differentiated cells.

Are lineage-related cell types desirable or undesirable for the specific model? For example, non-cell autonomous neurotoxic stimuli from astrocytes are a key aspect of ALS (Di Giorgio *et al*, 2008; Marchetto *et al*, 2008; Meyer *et al*, 2014) and perhaps AD disease processes. It therefore would be informative to have patient-derived astrocytes included in these disease models. Most iPSC-directed differentiation protocols result in the production of multiple cell types within the same developmental lineage. In addition, several groups have started to develop three-dimensional protocols that produce several cell types from the same tissue that self-organize into structures that mimic the primary tissue (Eiraku *et al*, 2011; Nakano *et al*, 2012; Koehler *et al*, 2013; Koehler & Hashino, 2014). For certain tissues, such as the inner ear, this may enable more relevant disease models.

In contrast, lineage conversion strategies would not be expected to produce developmentally related cell types at a substantial rate nor 3D structures (unless a progenitor was formed that gives rise to self-organizing structures). But this would be desirable for screening applications where pure cultures of one neuronal subtype simplify high-throughput scaling and assay interpretation.

Overall, there are advantages and disadvantages to both approaches for the production of *in vitro* patient-derived cells depending on the disease and application. However, the emergence of the same phenotype in cells derived by both methods would certainly enhance confidence in the results.

A shift in focus: from developing neurons to maturing and aging them

A critical area that deserves further investigation is the maturity and aging of *in vitro* derived cells (Fig 2). We like to think that there are three stages we need to consider when setting up *in vitro* models of disease: the development, the maturation and the natural aging process of a neural cell type. While significant advancements have been achieved in generating and maturing neural cell types—either by directed differentiation or lineage conversion—little has been done in terms of affecting the aging of cells. For late onset diseases such as ALS, FTD, HD, PD and AD, it is possible that changes elicited by aging are required to induce the disease process. Age is the strongest risk factor for neurodegenerative diseases, and although there are rare cases with early onset presentation, the overwhelming majority of patients develop clinical symptoms in the later stages of their lives. The nature of the age-related risk remains largely unknown, and whether it arises from cell autonomous mechanisms or as a result of a systemic dysfunction remains to be determined. A number of studies support the notion that cellular epigenetic

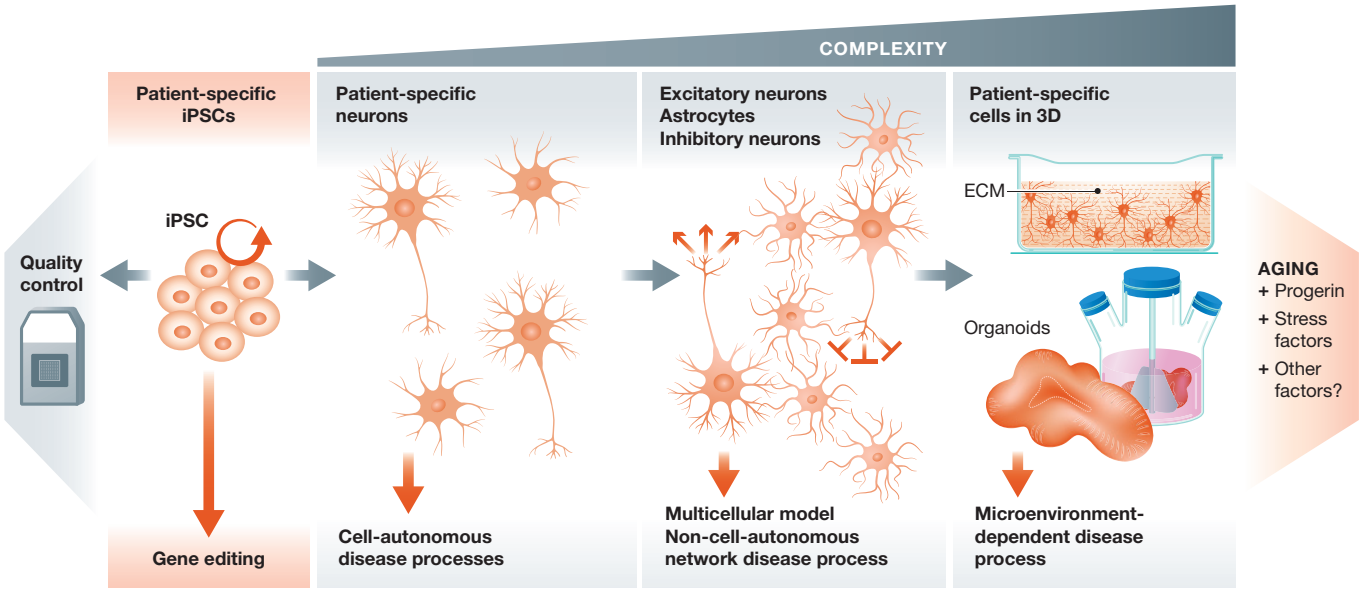


Figure 2. Developing stem cell-based models of neurological disorders.
Patient-specific iPSCs should be properly quality controlled for genomic integrity and pluripotent potential, while gene editing techniques allow for the generation of isogenic controls in cases where the disease-causing allele is known. Simple cell autonomous or more sophisticated multi-cellular and 3D disease models can be developed depending on the hypothesis being addressed. Neuronal maturity increases with the complexity of the cellular system, while methods for effectively aging neurons are lacking.

changes in the CNS correlate with aging. For example, recent work has demonstrated that profound changes in DNA methylation levels occur in the brains of mice with age (Lister *et al*, 2013), while aging oligodendrocytes lose their ability to effectively remyelinate damaged nerves (Ruckh *et al*, 2012). Importantly, under conditions of heterochronic parabiosis in mice, the effects on oligodendrocytes were reversible, implicating some aspect of epigenetic regulation.

Current studies suggest that the transcriptional and electrophysiological properties of both iPSC-derived and lineage-converted neurons are more similar to fetal neurons than adult (Son *et al*, 2011; Takazawa *et al*, 2012). It is likely that extrinsic factors present during normal development or aging are required to activate the maturation process. We and others have shown, for example, that the addition of primary astrocytes to lineage conversion cultures significantly improves the maturation of induced neurons (Son *et al*, 2011; Chanda *et al*, 2013; Wainger *et al*, 2015). Additional progress in generating more mature and aged cells will require a better understanding of the gene expression and functional changes associated with maturation and aging. This has been difficult to obtain for specific neuronal subtypes because of the scarcity of available human tissue. Efforts such as those of the Allen Brain Institute have shed some light on these markers, but future studies will need to analyze specific neuronal subtypes in order to be sure that differences between aged neurons and young neurons are truly due to aging and not different neuronal subtypes.

In addition to glial-derived factors, Rubin and colleagues recently showed that circulatory factors also contribute to the aging process in the CNS (Katsimpardi *et al*, 2014). They were able to identify a single factor, GDF11, which normally declines in expression with age. Interestingly, restoring GDF11 levels in old mice rejuvenated the proliferative and neurogenic properties of neural stem cells in the mouse (Katsimpardi *et al*, 2014). This raises the notion that there may be other factors that control the aging of neurons and could be exploited to regulate this process *in vitro*.

Studer and colleagues took a more intrinsic approach to inducing aging in iPSC-derived neurons by expressing *Progerin*, which is a mutant form of the Lamin A protein that causes accelerated aging phenotypes in humans (Miller *et al*, 2013). Expression of Progerin induced higher levels of DNA damage and mitochondrial reactive oxygen species in dopaminergic neurons derived from PD patients, which enabled the detection of PD-associated disease phenotypes such as dendrite degeneration, mitochondrial enlargement, Lewy body precursor inclusions and suppression of tyrosine hydroxylase expression (Miller *et al*, 2013). It remains unclear whether this approach induces the recapitulation of *bona fide* disease processes, but it represents a new line of targeted aging procedures.

From cell autonomy to more sophisticated systems

Neurons do not exist in isolation in the human nervous system. They form elaborate and functional networks with other neurons and also rely on a sophisticated microenvironment that is created by the interactions with other neural and non-neural cell types, which provide structural, metabolic and functional support as well as effective communication (Abbott *et al*, 2006). Glial cells, astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, microglia and endothelial cells exist in abundance in the nervous system and play vital functional roles. Glial cells buffer harmful ions, astrocytes provide nutrients and circulate neurotransmitters around synapses, oligodendrocytes form myelin sheaths around axons, microglia scavenge and degrade dead cells, and endothelial cells are important in maintaining the blood–brain barrier. Cell–cell interactions and the microenvironment as a whole might mediate important neuroprotective or neurotoxic activities in response to disease or injury. In fact, a number of studies over the last few years have clearly demonstrated that non-cell autonomous processes involving astrocytes, oligodendrocytes and microglia play a critical role in mediating disease progression and potentially onset in neurodegeneration including in ALS, HD, PD, prion disease, the spinal cerebellar ataxias (SCAs) and AD *in vivo* (Ilieva *et al*, 2009). The strength of utilizing iPSCs to study neurological disease is in their ability to generate a range of different cell types from the same genetic background (Fig 2). This allows for the assessment of how a specific genetic lesion, for example, might differentially impact neuronal subtypes. It also allows for a rational step-by step approach to assess how cellular interactions might contribute toward the evolvement of a disease-associated phenotype or a cellular response to stress.

The co-culture of spinal motor neurons with cortical astrocytes has previously been utilized in one of the first stem cell-based models of ALS to demonstrate how mutant or healthy astrocytes significantly compromised or maintained, respectively, the health of a pure population of motor neurons (Di Giorgio *et al*, 2008; Marchetto *et al*, 2008). The co-culture of cortical excitatory with cortical inhibitory neurons and the establishment of functional circuitry might be beneficial when studying epileptic syndromes. The clinical presentation of epileptic patients is the result of the functional control—or lack thereof—of a network of neurons, and recapitulating such a network could be an essential step toward the development of a cellular disease model. The importance of the local microenvironment in neuronal function and potentially dysfunction during disease is also relevant in the context of the three dimensionality that it creates. Neither the brain nor the spinal cord hosts isolated neurons surrounded by an entirely liquid trophic support (akin to culture media) in which nutrients, molecules and proteins can freely diffuse and float around. Recently, Kim, Tanzi and colleagues were able to successfully recapitulate amyloid-β plaques, and tau neurofibrillary tangles—the two pathological hallmarks of AD—in a single 3D human neural cell culture system (Choi *et al*, 2014). Although this system is not based on iPSCs and their cell lines expressed slightly elevated protein levels of *PSEN1* and *APP*, they designed a simple but innovative cell culture system with neurons grown embedded within a 0.3-mm layer of an extracellular matrix composed of BD Matrigel. This viscous layer reduced the diffusion of secreted amyloid-β and led to the accumulation of aggregated plaques. This is the first time this has been achieved in a cell-based *in vitro* system and demonstrates the importance of a 3D environment for disease modeling assays.

The recent description of cerebral organoids generated from human pluripotent stem cells and resembling the three-dimensional regional organization of a developing brain has created an exciting opportunity for iPSC-based disease modeling approaches (Lancaster *et al*, 2013). These brain-like structures, formed by the combination of external growth factor patterning and intrinsic and environmental cues, exhibit distinct regional identities that functionally interact and importantly recapitulate human cortical organization. The

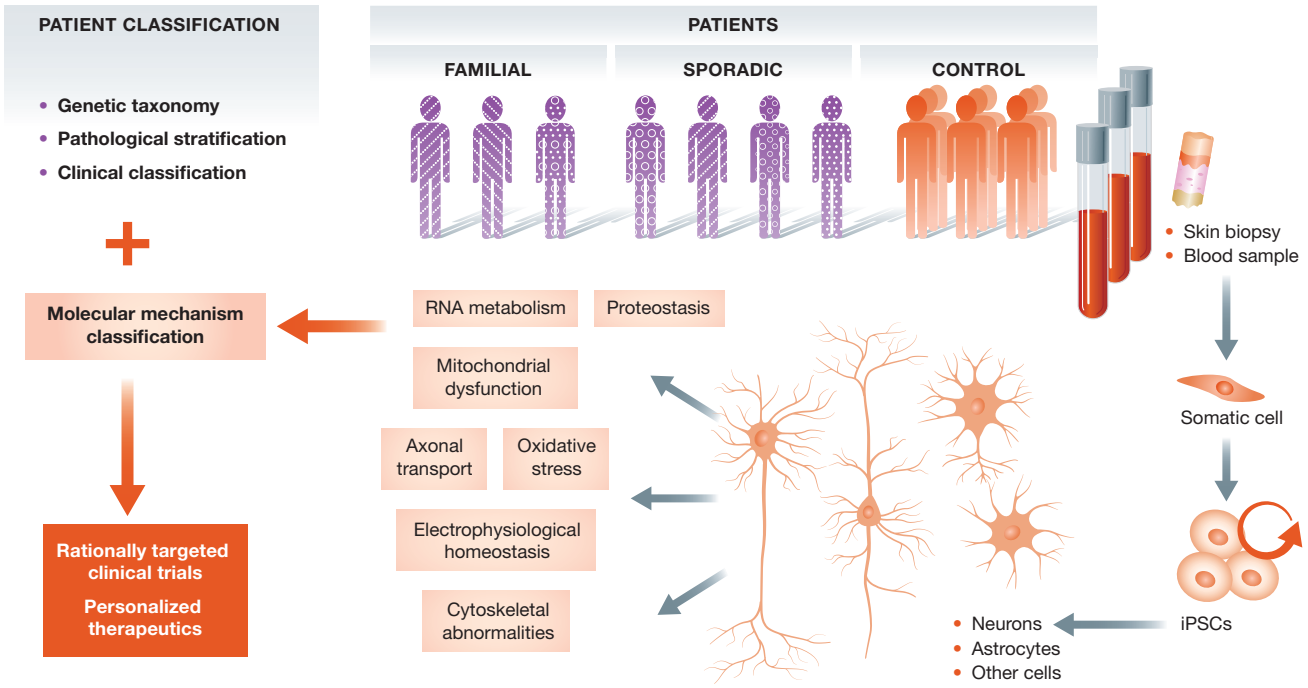


Figure 3. Patient stratification based on the molecular pathways that are affected.
Reprogramming and stem cell-based disease modeling can be utilized to address the level of heterogeneity by defining the molecular mechanisms that lead to disease in different patients. This novel classification of patients could lead to rationally targeted clinical trials and personalized therapeutic approaches.

authors utilized this method to study microcephaly and demonstrate that patient-specific organoids show premature neuronal differentiation and are only capable of developing to a smaller size. Importantly, mouse models have failed to effectively recapitulate these disease phenotypes for microcephaly, probably due to the dramatic differences in the development and regional organization of the brain as mice do not have an outer subventricular zone (SVZ). This system may be suitable for the study of other neurodevelopmental and neuropsychiatric syndromes in which there are moderate but crucial defects in cortical organization and function. This approach may also be useful in recapitulating human neurodegenerative models that primarily affect brain function as it may allow for the establishment of neuronal circuitry as well as biochemical networks.

Patient stratification based on molecular pathways affected

Neurological disorders including schizophrenia, ALS, PD, FTD and epilepsy are often characterized by a profound clinical and genetic heterogeneity, suggesting that they might represent a syndrome rather than a single nosological entity (Fanous & Kendler, 2005; Tremblay *et al*, 2013; Jeste & Geschwind, 2014). The variable combination of positive and negative symptoms in schizophrenia, the variable degree of upper and lower motor neuron dysfunction in ALS, the heterogeneity of cognitive symptoms in PD, the variable rate of progression in FTD and the differential response to anti-epileptic treatments in epileptic syndromes are some examples of the clinical diversity in neurological disorders. In addition, genetic studies in ALS, for example, have demonstrated that the disease can be caused by mutations in genes that encode proteins involved in diverse cellular functions ranging from RNA metabolism, vesicle transport, cytoskeletal homeostasis and the processing of unfolded proteins (Cleveland & Rothstein, 2001; Pasinelli & Brown, 2006; Sreedharan & Brown, 2013). While progress has been achieved in terms of genetic taxonomy, pathological stratification and the classification of patients based on their clinical presentation, little is known about how similar or different patients are, in terms of the molecular pathways that mediate their disease processes. Reprogramming technologies can be used to develop *in vitro* models of genetic and sporadic disease cases and effectively stratify patients, based on (i) the neuronal subtype that exhibits a disease-associated phenotype and (ii) the pathway that leads to this phenotype in each case (Fig 3). This approach may lead to the identification of overlapping disease mechanisms that will be broadly relevant and represent the best therapeutic opportunities, or toward a personalized approach to clinical trials and therapeutic treatments.

Concluding remarks

Tremendous progress has been achieved in our efforts to develop cellular models of neurological disease since 2007 and the initial description of induced pluripotency and the concept of cellular reprogramming (Takahashi *et al*, 2007). We are now able to generate a wealth of different neural subtypes, have created and characterized hundreds of patient-specific iPSCs and their neural derivatives, have developed efficient gene editing approaches and

are continuously establishing elaborate methods for the functional analysis of neurons. During the next phase in the field, it is imperative that the research community offers unrestricted access to cell lines, human samples and differentiation protocols, maintains close communication and attempts to further establish standards for the quality control of pluripotent stem cells and the neuronal subtypes that are utilized for disease modeling and drug screening experiments. It is also worth pointing out that broad collaborative efforts with substantial financial support need to take center stage in order to address important outstanding questions. What is the variation in the properties of neurons generated from a significant number of healthy individuals? Can we assess the broader relevance of phenotypes identified in genetic types of disease by monitoring hundreds of sporadic cases? Can we predict how patients will respond to a potential therapeutic treatment by studying their stem cell-derived neurons? Can we match an *in vivo* clinical trial with an *in vitro* iPSC-based clinical trial to monitor the correlation of outcome measures? The answers to these questions will help us conclude what are the capabilities and limitations of this promising technological tool. Despite the challenges that have arisen over the last few years, the community has responded with sustained effort and is steadily moving forward toward the development of systems that will have an impact in our efforts to understand and treat diseases that affect the nervous system.

Acknowledgements

JI is supported by the Donald E. and Delia B. Baxter Foundation, SC-CTSI, an NIH K99 award R00-NS07743 and the Tau Consortium. EK is supported by the Les Turner ALS Foundation and Target ALS.

Conflict of interest

The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

References

Abbott NJ, Ronnback L, Hansson E (2006) Astrocyte-endothelial interactions at the blood-brain barrier. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 7: 41 – 53

Almeida S, Gascon E, Tran H, Chou HJ, Gendron TF, Degroot S, Tapper AR, Sellier C, Charlet-Berguerand N, Karydas A, Seeley WW, Boxer AL, Petrucelli L, Miller BL, Gao FB (2013) Modeling key pathological features of frontotemporal dementia with C9ORF72 repeat expansion in iPSC-derived human neurons. *Acta Neuropathol* 126: 385 – 399

Ambasudhan R, Talantova M, Coleman R, Yuan X, Zhu S, Lipton SA, Ding S (2011) Direct reprogramming of adult human fibroblasts to functional neurons under defined conditions. *Cell Stem Cell* 9: 113 – 118

Amenduni M, De Filippis R, Cheung AY, Disciglio V, Epistolato MC, Ariani F, Mari F, Mencarelli MA, Hayek Y, Renieri A, Ellis J, Meloni I (2011) iPS cells to model CDKL5-related disorders. *Eur J Hum Genet* 19: 1246 – 1255

Amoroso MW, Croft GF, Williams DJ, O'Keeffe S, Carrasco MA, Davis AR, Roybon L, Oakley DH, Maniatis T, Henderson CE, Wichterle H (2013) Accelerated high-yield generation of limb-innervating motor neurons from human stem cells. *J Neurosci* 33: 574 – 586

An MC, Zhang N, Scott G, Montoro D, Wittkop T, Mooney S, Melov S, Ellerby LM (2012) Genetic correction of Huntington's disease phenotypes in induced pluripotent stem cells. *Cell Stem Cell* 11: 253 – 263

Ananiev G, Williams EC, Li H, Chang Q (2011) Isogenic pairs of wild type and mutant induced pluripotent stem cell (iPSC) lines from Rett syndrome patients as *in vitro* disease model. *PLoS ONE* 6: e25255

Barmada SJ, Serio A, Arjun A, Bilican B, Daub A, Ando DM, Tsvetkov A, Pleiss M, Li X, Peisach D, Shaw C, Chandran S, Finkbeiner S (2014) Autophagy induction enhances TDP43 turnover and survival in neuronal ALS models. *Nat Chem Biol* 10: 677 – 685

Bilican B, Serio A, Barmada SJ, Nishimura AL, Sullivan GJ, Carrasco M, Phatnani HP, Puddifoot CA, Story D, Fletcher J, Park IH, Friedman BA, Daley GQ, Wyllie DJ, Hardingham GE, Wilmut I, Finkbeiner S, Maniatis T, Shaw CE, Chandran S (2012) Mutant induced pluripotent stem cell lines recapitulate aspects of TDP-43 proteinopathies and reveal cell-specific vulnerability. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 109: 5803 – 5808

Bissonnette CJ, Lyass L, Bhattacharyya BJ, Belmadani A, Miller RJ, Kessler JA (2011) The controlled generation of functional basal forebrain cholinergic neurons from human embryonic stem cells. *Stem Cells* 29: 802 – 811

Blanchard JW, Eade KT, Szucs A, Lo Sardo V, Tsunemoto RK, Williams D, Sanna PP, Baldwin KK (2015) Selective conversion of fibroblasts into peripheral sensory neurons. *Nat Neurosci* 18: 25 – 35

de Boer AS, Koszka K, Kiskinis E, Suzuki N, Davis-Dusenbery BN, Eggan K (2014) Genetic validation of a therapeutic target in a mouse model of ALS. *Sci Transl Med* 6: 248ra104

Bonaguidi MA, Wheeler MA, Shapiro JS, Stadel RP, Sun GJ, Ming GL, Song H (2011) *In vivo* clonal analysis reveals self-renewing and multipotent adult neural stem cell characteristics. *Cell* 145: 1142 – 1155

Brennand KJ, Simone A, Jou J, Gelboin-Burkhart C, Tran N, Sangar S, Li Y, Mu Y, Chen G, Yu D, McCarthy S, Sebat J, Gage FH (2011) Modelling schizophrenia using human induced pluripotent stem cells. *Nature* 473: 221 – 225

Brennand K, Savas JN, Kim Y, Tran N, Simone A, Hashimoto-Torii K, Beaumont KG, Kim HJ, Topol A, Ladran I, Abdelrahim M, Matikainen-Ankney B, Chao SH, Mrksich M, Rakic P, Fang G, Zhang B, Yates JR III, Gage FH (2015) Phenotypic differences in hiPSC NPCs derived from patients with schizophrenia. *Mol Psychiatry* 20: 361 – 368

Byers B, Cord B, Nguyen HN, Schule B, Fenno L, Lee PC, Deisseroth K, Langston JW, Pera RR, Palmer TD (2011) SNCA triplication Parkinson's patient's iPSC-derived DA neurons accumulate alpha-synuclein and are susceptible to oxidative stress. *PLoS ONE* 6: e26159

Cahan P, Li H, Morris SA, Lummertz da Rocha E, Daley GQ, Collins JJ (2014) CellNet: network biology applied to stem cell engineering. *Cell* 158: 903 – 915

Caiazzo M, Dell'Anno MT, Dvoretskova E, Lazarevic D, Taverna S, Leo D, Sotnikova TD, Menegon A, Roncaglia P, Colciago G, Russo G, Carninci P, Pezzoli G, Gainetdinov RR, Gustincich S, Dityatev A, Broccoli V (2011) Direct generation of functional dopaminergic neurons from mouse and human fibroblasts. *Nature* 476: 224 – 227

Caiazzo M, Giannelli S, Valente P, Lignani G, Carissimo A, Sessa A, Colasante G, Bartolomeo R, Massimino L, Ferroni S, Settembre C, Benfenati F, Broccoli V (2015) Direct conversion of fibroblasts into functional astrocytes by defined transcription factors. *Stem Cell Rep* 4: 25 – 36

Camnasio S, Delli Carri A, Lombardo A, Grad I, Mariotti C, Castucci A, Rozell B, Lo Riso P, Castiglioni V, Zuccato C, Rochon C, Takashima Y, Diaferia G, Biunno I, Gellera C, Jaconi M, Smith A, Hovatta O, Naldini L, Di Donato S *et al* (2012) The first reported generation of several induced pluripotent stem cell lines from homozygous and heterozygous Huntington's disease patients demonstrates mutation related enhanced lysosomal activity. *Neurobiol Dis* 46: 41 – 51

Chamberlain SJ, Chen PF, Ng KY, Bourgois-Rocha F, Lemtiri-Chlieh F, Levine ES, Lalande M (2010) Induced pluripotent stem cell models of the genomic imprinting disorders Angelman and Prader-Willi syndromes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 107: 17668 – 17673

Chambers SM, Fasano CA, Papapetrou EP, Tomishima M, Sadelain M, Studer L (2009) Highly efficient neural conversion of human ES and iPS cells by dual inhibition of SMAD signaling. *Nat Biotechnol* 27: 275 – 280

Chambers SM, Mica Y, Studer L, Tomishima MJ (2011) Converting human pluripotent stem cells to neural tissue and neurons to model neurodegeneration. *Methods Mol Biol* 793: 87 – 97

Chanda S, Marro S, Wernig M, Sudhof TC (2013) Neurons generated by direct conversion of fibroblasts reproduce synaptic phenotype caused by autism-associated neuroligin-3 mutation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 110: 16622 – 16627

Chanda S, Ang CE, Davila J, Pak C, Mall M, Lee QY, Ahlenius H, Jung SW, Sudhof TC, Wernig M (2014) Generation of induced neuronal cells by the single reprogramming factor ASCL1. *Stem Cell Rep* 3: 282 – 296

Chen H, Qian K, Du Z, Cao J, Petersen A, Liu H, Blackbourn LWT, Huang CL, Errigo A, Yin Y, Lu J, Ayala M, Zhang SC (2014) Modeling ALS with iPSCs reveals that mutant SOD1 misregulates neurofilament balance in motor neurons. *Cell Stem Cell* 14: 796 – 809

Cheng L, Hu W, Qiu B, Zhao J, Yu Y, Guan W, Wang M, Yang W, Pei G (2014) Generation of neural progenitor cells by chemical cocktails and hypoxia. *Cell Res* 24: 665 – 679

Cheung AY, Horvath LM, Grafodatskaya D, Pasceri P, Weksberg R, Hotta A, Carrel L, Ellis J (2011) Isolation of MECP2-null Rett Syndrome patient hiPS cells and isogenic controls through X-chromosome inactivation. *Hum Mol Genet* 20: 2103 – 2115

Choi SH, Kim YH, Hebisch M, Sliwinski C, Lee S, D'Avanzo C, Chen H, Hooli B, Asselin C, Muffat J, Klee JB, Zhang C, Wainger BJ, Peitz M, Kovacs DM, Woolf CJ, Wagner SL, Tanzi RE, Kim DY (2014) A three-dimensional human neural cell culture model of Alzheimer's disease. *Nature* 515: 274 – 278

Chung CY, Khurana V, Auluck PK, Tardiff DF, Mazzulli JR, Soldner F, Baru V, Lou Y, Freyzon Y, Cho S, Mungenast AE, Muffat J, Mitalipova M, Pluth MD, Jui NT, Schule B, Lippard SJ, Tsai LH, Krainc D, Buchwald SL *et al* (2013) Identification and rescue of alpha-synuclein toxicity in Parkinson patient-derived neurons. *Science* 342: 983 – 987

Cleveland DW, Rothstein JD (2001) From Charcot to Lou Gehrig: deciphering selective motor neuron death in ALS. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 2: 806 – 819

Cooper O, Seo H, Andrabi S, Guardia-Laguarta C, Graziotto J, Sundberg M, McLean JR, Carrillo-Reid L, Xie Z, Osborn T, Hargus G, Deleidi M, Lawson T, Bogetofte H, Perez-Torres E, Clark L, Moskowitz C, Mazzulli J, Chen L, Volpicelli-Daley L *et al* (2012) Pharmacological rescue of mitochondrial deficits in iPSC-derived neural cells from patients with familial Parkinson's disease. *Sci Transl Med* 4: 141ra190

Corti S, Nizzardo M, Simone C, Falcone M, Nardini M, Ronchi D, Donadoni C, Salani S, Riboldi G, Magri F, Menozzi G, Bonaglia C, Rizzo F, Bresolin N, Comi GP (2012) Genetic correction of human induced pluripotent stem cells from patients with spinal muscular atrophy. *Sci Transl Med* 4: 165ra162

Davis-Dusenbery BN, Williams LA, Klim JR, Eggan K (2014) How to make spinal motor neurons. *Development* 141: 491 – 501

Denton KR, Lei L, Grenier J, Rodionov V, Blackstone C, Li XJ (2014) Loss of spastin function results in disease-specific axonal defects in human pluripotent stem cell-based models of hereditary spastic paraplegia. *Stem Cells* 32: 414 – 423

Devine MJ, Ryten M, Vodicka P, Thomson AJ, Burdon T, Houlden H, Cavaleri F, Nagano M, Drummond NJ, Taanman JW, Schapira AH, Gwinn K, Hardy J, Lewis PA, Kunath T (2011) Parkinson's disease induced pluripotent stem cells with triplication of the alpha-synuclein locus. *Nat Commun* 2: 440

Devlin AC, Burr K, Borooah S, Foster JD, Cleary EM, Geti I, Vallier L, Shaw CE, Chandran S, Miles GB (2015) Human iPSC-derived motoneurons harbouring TARDBP or C9ORF72 ALS mutations are dysfunctional despite maintaining viability. *Nat Commun* 6: 5999

Di Giorgio FP, Boulting GL, Bobrowicz S, Eggan KC (2008) Human embryonic stem cell-derived motor neurons are sensitive to the toxic effect of glial cells carrying an ALS-causing mutation. *Cell Stem Cell* 3: 637 – 648

Dimos JT, Rodolfa KT, Niakan KK, Weisenthal LM, Mitsumoto H, Chung W, Croft GF, Saphier G, Leibel R, Goland R, Wichterle H, Henderson CE, Eggan K (2008) Induced pluripotent stem cells generated from patients with ALS can be differentiated into motor neurons. *Science* 321: 1218 – 1221

Djuric U, Cheung AY, Zhang W, Mok RS, Lai W, Piekna A, Hendry JA, Ross PJ, Pasceri P, Kim DS, Salter MW, Ellis J (2015) MECP2e1 isoform mutation affects the form and function of neurons derived from Rett syndrome patient iPS cells. *Neurobiol Dis* 76: 37 – 45

Doers ME, Musser MT, Nichol R, Berndt ER, Baker M, Gomez TM, Zhang SC, Abbeduto L, Bhattacharyya A (2014) iPSC-derived forebrain neurons from FXS individuals show defects in initial neurite outgrowth. *Stem Cells Dev* 23: 1777 – 1787

Donnelly CJ, Zhang PW, Pham JT, Heusler AR, Mistry NA, Vidensky S, Daley EL, Poth EM, Hoover B, Fines DM, Maragakis N, Tienari PJ, Petrucelli L, Traynor BJ, Wang J, Rigo F, Bennett CF, Blackshaw S, Sattler R, Rothstein JD (2013) RNA toxicity from the ALS/FTD C9ORF72 expansion is mitigated by antisense intervention. *Neuron* 80: 415 – 428

Duan L, Bhattacharyya BJ, Belmadani A, Pan L, Miller RJ, Kessler JA (2014) Stem cell derived basal forebrain cholinergic neurons from Alzheimer's disease patients are more susceptible to cell death. *Mol Neurodegener* 9: 3

Ebert AD, Yu J, Rose FF Jr, Mattis VB, Lorson CL, Thomson JA, Svendsen CN (2009) Induced pluripotent stem cells from a spinal muscular atrophy patient. *Nature* 457: 277 – 280

Egawa N, Kitaoka S, Tsukita K, Naitoh M, Takahashi K, Yamamoto T, Adachi F, Kondo T, Okita K, Asaka I, Aoi T, Watanabe A, Yamada Y, Morizane A, Takahashi J, Ayaki T, Ito H, Yoshikawa K, Yamawaki S, Suzuki S *et al* (2012) Drug screening for ALS using patient-specific induced pluripotent stem cells. *Sci Transl Med* 4: 145ra104

Eigentler A, Boesch S, Schneider R, Dechant G, Nat R (2013) Induced pluripotent stem cells from friedreich ataxia patients fail to upregulate frataxin during *in vitro* differentiation to peripheral sensory neurons. *Stem Cells Dev* 22: 3271 – 3282

Eiraku M, Takata N, Ishibashi H, Kawada M, Sakakura E, Okuda S, Sekiguchi K, Adachi T, Sasai Y (2011) Self-organizing optic-cup morphogenesis in three-dimensional culture. *Nature* 472: 51 – 56

Erceg S, Lukovic D, Moreno-Manzano V, Stojkovic M, Bhattacharya SS (2012) Derivation of cerebellar neurons from human pluripotent stem cells. *Curr Protoc Stem Cell Biol* Chapter 1: Unit 1H 5

Espuny-Camacho I, Michelsen KA, Gall D, Linaro D, Hasche A, Bonnefont J, Bali C, Orduz D, Bilheu A, Herpoel A, Lambert N, Gaspard N, Peron S, Schiffmann SN, Giugliano M, Gaillard A, Vanderhaeghen P (2013) Pyramidal neurons derived from human pluripotent stem cells integrate efficiently into mouse brain circuits *in vivo*. *Neuron* 77: 440 – 456

Fanous AH, Kendler KS (2005) Genetic heterogeneity, modifier genes, and quantitative phenotypes in psychiatric illness: searching for a framework. *Mol Psychiatry* 10: 6 – 13

Flierl A, Oliveira LM, Falomir-Lockhart LJ, Mak SK, Hesley J, Soldner F, Arndt-Jovin DJ, Jaenisch R, Langston JW, Jovin TM, Schule B (2014) Higher

vulnerability and stress sensitivity of neuronal precursor cells carrying an alpha-synuclein gene triplication. *PLoS ONE* 9: e112413

Fong H, Wang C, Knoferle J, Walker D, Balestra ME, Tong LM, Leung L, Ring KL, Seeley WW, Karydas A, Kshirsagar MA, Boxer AL, Kosik KS, Miller BL, Huang Y (2013) Genetic correction of tauopathy phenotypes in neurons derived from human induced pluripotent stem cells. *Stem Cell Rep* 1: 226 – 234

Fox MD, Buckner RL, Liu H, Chakravarty MM, Lozano AM, Pascual-Leone A (2014) Resting-state networks link invasive and noninvasive brain stimulation across diverse psychiatric and neurological diseases. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 111: E4367 – E4375

Gascon E, Lynch K, Ruan H, Almeida S, Verheyden JM, Seeley WW, Dickson DW, Petrucelli L, Sun D, Jiao J, Zhou H, Jakovcevski M, Akbarian S, Yao WD, Gao FB (2014) Alterations in microRNA-124 and AMPA receptors contribute to social behavioral deficits in frontotemporal dementia. *Nat Med* 20: 1444 – 1451

Griesi-Oliveira K, Acab A, Gupta AR, Sunaga DY, Chailangkarn T, Nicol X, Nunez Y, Walker MF, Murdoch JD, Sanders SJ, Fernandez TV, Ji W, Lifton RP, Vadasz E, Dietrich A, Pradhan D, Song H, Ming GL, Gu X, Haddad G *et al* (2014) Modeling non-syndromic autism and the impact of TRPC6 disruption in human neurons. *Mol Psychiatry* doi: 10.1038/mp.2014.141

Guo X, Disatnik MH, Monbureau M, Shamloo M, Mochly-Rosen D, Qi X (2013) Inhibition of mitochondrial fragmentation diminishes Huntington's disease-associated neurodegeneration. *J Clin Invest* 123: 5371 – 5388

Gupta N, Henry RG, Strober J, Kang SM, Lim DA, Bucci M, Caverzasi E, Gaetano L, Mandelli ML, Ryan T, Perry R, Farrell J, Jeremy RJ, Ulman M, Huhn SL, Barkovich AJ, Rowitch DH (2012) Neural stem cell engraftment and myelination in the human brain. *Sci Transl Med* 4: 155ra137

Han DW, Tapia N, Hermann A, Hemmer K, Hoing S, Arauzo-Bravo MJ, Zaehres H, Wu G, Frank S, Moritz S, Greber B, Yang JH, Lee HT, Schwamborn JC, Storch A, Scholer HR (2012) Direct reprogramming of fibroblasts into neural stem cells by defined factors. *Cell Stem Cell* 10: 465 – 472

HD iPSC Consortium (2012) Induced pluripotent stem cells from patients with Huntington's disease show CAG-repeat-expansion-associated phenotypes. *Cell Stem Cell* 11: 264 – 278

Heinrich C, Blum R, Gascon S, Masserdotti G, Tripathi P, Sanchez R, Tiedt S, Schroeder T, Gotz M, Berninger B (2010) Directing astroglia from the cerebral cortex into subtype specific functional neurons. *PLoS Biol* 8: e1000373

Hick A, Wattenhofer-Donze M, Chintawar S, Tropel P, Simard JP, Vaucamps N, Gall D, Lambot L, Andre C, Reutenauer L, Rai M, Teletin M, Messaddeq N, Schiffmann SN, Viville S, Pearson CE, Pandolfo M, Puccio H (2013) Neurons and cardiomyocytes derived from induced pluripotent stem cells as a model for mitochondrial defects in Friedreich's ataxia. *Dis Model Mech* 6: 608 – 621

Higurashi N, Uchida T, Lossin C, Misumi Y, Okada Y, Akamatsu W, Imaizumi Y, Zhang B, Nabeshima K, Mori MX, Katsurabayashi S, Shirasaka Y, Okano H, Hirose S (2013) A human Dravet syndrome model from patient induced pluripotent stem cells. *Mol Brain* 6: 19

Hook V, Brennand KJ, Kim Y, Toneff T, Funkelstein L, Lee KC, Ziegler M, Gage FH (2014) Human iPSC neurons display activity-dependent neurotransmitter secretion: aberrant catecholamine levels in schizophrenia neurons. *Stem Cell Rep* 3: 531 – 538

Hossini AM, Megges M, Prigione A, Lichtner B, Toliat MR, Wruck W, Schroter F, Nuernberg P, Kroll H, Makrantonaki E, Zouboulis CC, Adjaye J (2015) Induced pluripotent stem cell-derived neuronal cells from a sporadic Alzheimer's disease donor as a model for investigating AD-associated gene regulatory networks. *BMC Genom* 16: 84

Hsu PD, Lander ES, Zhang F (2014) Development and applications of CRISPR-Cas9 for genome engineering. *Cell* 157: 1262 – 1278

Hu BY, Du ZW, Zhang SC (2009) Differentiation of human oligodendrocytes from pluripotent stem cells. *Nat Protoc* 4: 1614 – 1622

Ilieva H, Polymenidou M, Cleveland DW (2009) Non-cell autonomous toxicity in neurodegenerative disorders: ALS and beyond. *J Cell Biol* 187: 761 – 772

Imaizumi Y, Okada Y, Akamatsu W, Koike M, Kuzumaki N, Hayakawa H, Nihira T, Kobayashi T, Ohyama M, Sato S, Takanashi M, Funayama M, Hirayama A, Soga T, Hishiki T, Suematsu M, Yagi T, Ito D, Kosakai A, Hayashi K *et al* (2012) Mitochondrial dysfunction associated with increased oxidative stress and alpha-synuclein accumulation in PARK2 iPSC-derived neurons and postmortem brain tissue. *Mol Brain* 5: 35

Israel MA, Yuan SH, Bardy C, Reyna SM, Mu Y, Herrera C, Hefferan MP, Van Gorp S, Nazor KL, Boscolo FS, Carson CT, Laurent LC, Marsala M, Gage FH, Remes AM, Koo EH, Goldstein LS (2012) Probing sporadic and familial Alzheimer's disease using induced pluripotent stem cells. *Nature* 482: 216 – 220

Jeste SS, Geschwind DH (2014) Disentangling the heterogeneity of autism spectrum disorder through genetic findings. *Nat Rev Neurol* 10: 74 – 81

Jiao J, Yang Y, Shi Y, Chen J, Gao R, Fan Y, Yao H, Liao W, Sun XF, Gao S (2013) Modeling Dravet syndrome using induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs) and directly converted neurons. *Hum Mol Genet* 22: 4241 – 4252

Jin ZB, Okamoto S, Osakada F, Homma K, Assawachananont J, Hirami Y, Iwata T, Takahashi M (2011) Modeling retinal degeneration using patient-specific induced pluripotent stem cells. *PLoS ONE* 6: e17084

Jin ZB, Okamoto S, Xiang P, Takahashi M (2012) Integration-free induced pluripotent stem cells derived from retinitis pigmentosa patient for disease modeling. *Stem Cells Transl Med* 1: 503 – 509

Johansson JU, Woodling NS, Wang Q, Panchal M, Liang X, Trueba-Saiz A, Brown HD, Mhatre SD, Loui T, Andreasson KI (2015) Prostaglandin signaling suppresses beneficial microglial function in Alzheimer's disease models. *J Clin Invest* 125: 350 – 364

Juopperi TA, Kim WR, Chiang CH, Yu H, Margolis RL, Ross CA, Ming GL, Song H (2012) Astrocytes generated from patient induced pluripotent stem cells recapitulate features of Huntington's disease patient cells. *Mol Brain* 5: 17

Kadoshima T, Sakaguchi H, Nakano T, Soen M, Ando S, Eiraku M, Sasai Y (2013) Self-organization of axial polarity, inside-out layer pattern, and species-specific progenitor dynamics in human ES cell-derived neocortex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 110: 20284 – 20289

Karow M, Sanchez R, Schichor C, Masserdotti G, Ortega F, Heinrich C, Gascon S, Khan MA, Lie DC, Dellavalle A, Cossu G, Goldbrunner R, Gotz M, Berninger B (2012) Reprogramming of pericyte-derived cells of the adult human brain into induced neuronal cells. *Cell Stem Cell* 11: 471 – 476

Katsimpardi L, Litterman NK, Schein PA, Miller CM, Loffredo FS, Wojtkiewicz GR, Chen JW, Lee RT, Wagers AJ, Rubin LL (2014) Vascular and neurogenic rejuvenation of the aging mouse brain by young systemic factors. *Science* 344: 630 – 634

Kim J, Efe JA, Zhu S, Talantova M, Yuan X, Wang S, Lipton SA, Zhang K, Ding S (2011a) Direct reprogramming of mouse fibroblasts to neural progenitors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 108: 7838 – 7843

Kim J, Su SC, Wang H, Cheng AW, Cassady JP, Lodato MA, Lengner CJ, Chung CY, Dawlaty MM, Tsai LH, Jaenisch R (2011b) Functional integration of dopaminergic neurons directly converted from mouse fibroblasts. *Cell Stem Cell* 9: 413 – 419

Kim KY, Hysolli E, Park IH (2011c) Neuronal maturation defect in induced pluripotent stem cells from patients with Rett syndrome. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 108: 14169 – 14174

Kiskinis E, Sandoe J, Williams LA, Boulting GL, Moccia R, Wainger BJ, Han S, Peng T, Thams S, Mikkilineni S, Mellin C, Merkle FT, Davis-Dusenbery BN, Ziller M, Oakley D, Ichida J, Di Costanzo S, Atwater N, Maeder ML, Goodwin MJ *et al* (2014) Pathways disrupted in human ALS motor neurons identified through genetic correction of mutant SOD1. *Cell Stem Cell* 14: 781 – 795

Koehler KR, Mikosz AM, Molosh AI, Patel D, Hashino E (2013) Generation of inner ear sensory epithelia from pluripotent stem cells in 3D culture. *Nature* 500: 217 – 221

Koehler KR, Hashino E (2014) 3D mouse embryonic stem cell culture for generating inner ear organoids. *Nat Protoc* 9: 1229 – 1244

Kondo T, Asai M, Tsukita K, Kutoku Y, Ohsawa Y, Sunada Y, Imamura K, Egawa N, Yahata N, Okita K, Takahashi K, Asaka I, Aoi T, Watanabe A, Watanabe K, Kadoya C, Nakano R, Watanabe D, Maruyama K, Hori O *et al* (2013) Modeling Alzheimer's disease with iPSCs reveals stress phenotypes associated with intracellular Abeta and differential drug responsiveness. *Cell Stem Cell* 12: 487 – 496

Krencik R, Zhang SC (2011) Directed differentiation of functional astroglial subtypes from human pluripotent stem cells. *Nat Protoc* 6: 1710 – 1717

Krey JF, Pasca SP, Shcheglovitov A, Yazawa M, Schwemberger R, Rasmusson R, Dolmetsch RE (2013) Timothy syndrome is associated with activity-dependent dendritic retraction in rodent and human neurons. *Nat Neurosci* 16: 201 – 209

Kriks S, Shim JW, Piao J, Ganat YM, Wakeman DR, Xie Z, Carrillo-Reid L, Auyeung G, Antonacci C, Buch A, Yang L, Beal MF, Surmeier DJ, Kordower JH, Tabar V, Studer L (2011) Dopamine neurons derived from human ES cells efficiently engraft in animal models of Parkinson's disease. *Nature* 480: 547 – 551

Ladewig J, Mertens J, Kesavan J, Doerr J, Poppe D, Glaue F, Herms S, Wernet P, Kogler G, Muller FJ, Koch P, Brustle O (2012) Small molecules enable highly efficient neuronal conversion of human fibroblasts. *Nat Methods* 9: 575 – 578

Lancaster MA, Renner M, Martin CA, Wenzel D, Bicknell LS, Hurles ME, Homfray T, Penninger JM, Jackson AP, Knoblich JA (2013) Cerebral organoids model human brain development and microcephaly. *Nature* 501: 373 – 379

Larimore J, Ryder PV, Kim KY, Ambrose LA, Chapleau C, Calfa G, Gross C, Bassell GJ, Pozzo-Miller L, Smith Y, Talbot K, Park IH, Faundez V (2013) MeCP2 regulates the synaptic expression of a Dysbindin-BLOC-1 network component in mouse brain and human induced pluripotent stem cell-derived neurons. *PLoS ONE* 8: e65069

Lee G, Papapetrou EP, Kim H, Chambers SM, Tomishima MJ, Fasano CA, Ganat YM, Menon J, Shimizu F, Viale A, Tabar V, Sadelain M, Studer L (2009) Modelling pathogenesis and treatment of familial dysautonomia using patient-specific iPSCs. *Nature* 461: 402 – 406

Lee G, Ramirez CN, Kim H, Zeltner N, Liu B, Radu C, Bhinder B, Kim YJ, Choi IY, Mukherjee-Clavin B, Djaballah H, Studer L (2012) Large-scale screening using familial dysautonomia induced pluripotent stem cells identifies compounds that rescue IKBKAP expression. *Nat Biotechnol* 30: 1244 – 1248

Lee P, Martin NT, Nakamura K, Azghadi S, Amiri M, Ben-David U, Perlman S, Gatti RA, Hu H, Lowry WE (2013) SMRT compounds abrogate cellular phenotypes of ataxia telangiectasia in neural derivatives of patient-specific hiPSCs. *Nat Commun* 4: 1824

Li XJ, Zhang X, Johnson MA, Wang ZB, Lavaute T, Zhang SC (2009) Coordination of sonic hedgehog and Wnt signaling determines ventral and dorsal telencephalic neuron types from human embryonic stem cells. *Development* 136: 4055 – 4063

Li W, Cavelti-Weder C, Zhang Y, Clement K, Donovan S, Gonzalez G, Zhu J, Stemann M, Xu K, Hashimoto T, Yamada T, Nakanishi M, Zhang Y, Zeng S, Gifford D, Meissner A, Weir G, Zhou Q (2014) Long-term persistence and development of induced pancreatic beta cells generated by lineage conversion of acinar cells. *Nat Biotechnol* 32: 1223 – 1230

Lister R, Mukamel EA, Nery JR, Urich M, Puddifoot CA, Johnson ND, Lucero J, Huang Y, Dwork AJ, Schultz MD, Yu M, Tonti-Filippini J, Heyn H, Hu S, Wu JC, Rao A, Esteller M, He C, Haghighi FG, Sejnowski TJ *et al* (2013) Global epigenomic reconfiguration during mammalian brain development. *Science* 341: 1237905

Liu J, Verma PJ, Evans-Galea MV, Delatycki MB, Michalska A, Leung J, Crombie D, Sarsero JP, Williamson R, Dottori M, Pebay A (2011) Generation of induced pluripotent stem cell lines from Friedreich ataxia patients. *Stem Cell Rev* 7: 703 – 713

Liu GH, Qu J, Suzuki K, Nivet E, Li M, Montserrat N, Yi F, Xu X, Ruiz S, Zhang W, Wagner U, Kim A, Ren B, Li Y, Goebl A, Kim J, Soligalla RD, Dubova I, Thompson J, Yates J III *et al* (2012a) Progressive degeneration of human neural stem cells caused by pathogenic LRRK2. *Nature* 491: 603 – 607

Liu J, Koscielska KA, Cao Z, Hulsizer S, Grace N, Mitchell G, Nacey C, Githinji J, McGee J, Garcia-Arocena D, Hagerman RJ, Nolta J, Pessah IN, Hagerman PJ (2012b) Signaling defects in iPSC-derived fragile X premutation neurons. *Hum Mol Genet* 21: 3795 – 3805

Liu X, Li F, Stubblefield EA, Blanchard B, Richards TL, Larson GA, He Y, Huang Q, Tan AC, Zhang D, Benke TA, Sladek JR, Zahniser NR, Li CY (2012c) Direct reprogramming of human fibroblasts into dopaminergic neuron-like cells. *Cell Res* 22: 321 – 332

Liu ML, Zang T, Zou Y, Chang JC, Gibson JR, Huber KM, Zhang CL (2013a) Small molecules enable neurogenin 2 to efficiently convert human fibroblasts into cholinergic neurons. *Nat Commun* 4: 2183

Liu Y, Lopez-Santiago LF, Yuan Y, Jones JM, Zhang H, O'Malley HA, Patino GA, O'Brien JE, Rusconi R, Gupta A, Thompson RC, Natowicz MR, Meisler MH, Isom LL, Parent JM (2013b) Dravet syndrome patient-derived neurons suggest a novel epilepsy mechanism. *Ann Neurol* 74: 128 – 139

Livide G, Patriarchi T, Amenduni M, Amabile S, Yasui D, Calcagno E, Lo Rizzo C, De Falco G, Ulivieri C, Ariani F, Mari F, Mencarelli MA, Hell JW, Renieri A, Meloni I (2015) GluD1 is a common altered player in neuronal differentiation from both MECP2-mutated and CDKL5-mutated iPS cells. *Eur J Hum Genet* 23: 195 – 201

Lojewski X, Staropoli JF, Biswas-Legrand S, Simas AM, Haliw L, Selig MK, Coppel SH, Goss KA, Petcherski A, Chandrachud U, Sheridan SD, Lucente D, Sims KB, Gusella JF, Sondhi D, Crystal RG, Reinhardt P, Sterneckert J, Scholer H, Haggarty SJ *et al* (2014) Human iPSC models of neuronal ceroid lipofuscinosis capture distinct effects of TPP1 and CLN3 mutations on the endocytic pathway. *Hum Mol Genet* 23: 2005 – 2022

Lujan E, Chanda S, Ahlenius H, Sudhof TC, Wernig M (2012) Direct conversion of mouse fibroblasts to self-renewing, tripotent neural precursor cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 109: 2527 – 2532

Malik N, Rao MS (2013) A review of the methods for human iPSC derivation. *Methods Mol Biol* 997: 23 – 33

Marchetto MC, Muotri AR, Mu Y, Smith AM, Cezar GG, Gage FH (2008) Non-cell-autonomous effect of human SOD1 G37R astrocytes on motor neurons derived from human embryonic stem cells. *Cell Stem Cell* 3: 649 – 657

Marchetto MC, Carromeu C, Acab A, Yu D, Yeo GW, Mu Y, Chen G, Gage FH, Muotri AR (2010) A model for neural development and treatment of Rett syndrome using human induced pluripotent stem cells. *Cell* 143: 527 – 539

Maroof AM, Keros S, Tyson JA, Ying SW, Ganat YM, Merkle FT, Liu B, Goulburn A, Stanley EG, Elefanty AG, Widmer HR, Eggan K, Goldstein PA, Anderson

SA, Studer L (2013) Directed differentiation and functional maturation of cortical interneurons from human embryonic stem cells. *Cell Stem Cell* 12: 559 – 572

Marro S, Pang ZP, Yang N, Tsai MC, Qu K, Chang HY, Sudhof TC, Wernig M (2011) Direct lineage conversion of terminally differentiated hepatocytes to functional neurons. *Cell Stem Cell* 9: 374 – 382

Mazzulli JR, Xu YH, Sun Y, Knight AL, McLean PJ, Caldwell GA, Sidransky E, Grabowski GA, Krainc D (2011) Gaucher disease glucocerebrosidase and alpha-synuclein form a bidirectional pathogenic loop in synucleinopathies. *Cell* 146: 37 – 52

Mekhoubad S, Bock C, de Boer AS, Kiskinis E, Meissner A, Eggan K (2012) Erosion of dosage compensation impacts human iPSC disease modeling. *Cell Stem Cell* 10: 595 – 609

Merkle FT, Maroof A, Wataya T, Sasai Y, Studer L, Eggan K, Schier AF (2015) Generation of neuropeptidergic hypothalamic neurons from human pluripotent stem cells. *Development* 142: 633 – 643

Meyer JS, Howden SE, Wallace KA, Verhoeven AD, Wright LS, Capowski EE, Pinilla I, Martin JM, Tian S, Stewart R, Pattnaik B, Thomson JA, Gamm DM (2011) Optic vesicle-like structures derived from human pluripotent stem cells facilitate a customized approach to retinal disease treatment. *Stem Cells* 29: 1206 – 1218

Meyer K, Ferraiuolo L, Miranda CJ, Likhite S, McElroy S, Renusch S, Ditsworth D, Lagier-Tourenne C, Smith RA, Ravits J, Burghes AH, Shaw PJ, Cleveland DW, Kolb SJ, Kaspar BK (2014) Direct conversion of patient fibroblasts demonstrates non-cell autonomous toxicity of astrocytes to motor neurons in familial and sporadic ALS. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 111: 829 – 832

Miller JD, Ganat YM, Kishinevsky S, Bowman RL, Liu B, Tu EY, Mandal PK, Vera E, Shim JW, Kriks S, Taldone T, Fusaki N, Tomishima MJ, Krainc D, Milner TA, Rossi DJ, Studer L (2013) Human iPSC-based modeling of late-onset disease via progerin-induced aging. *Cell Stem Cell* 13: 691 – 705

Mitne-Neto M, Machado-Costa M, Marchetto MC, Bengtson MH, Joazeiro CA, Tsuda H, Bellen HJ, Silva HC, Oliveira AS, Lazar M, Muotri AR, Zatz M (2011) Downregulation of VAPB expression in motor neurons derived from induced pluripotent stem cells of ALS8 patients. *Hum Mol Genet* 20: 3642 – 3652

Muratore CR, Rice HC, Srikanth P, Callahan DG, Shin T, Benjamin LN, Walsh DM, Selkoe DJ, Young-Pearse TL (2014) The familial Alzheimer's disease APPV717I mutation alters APP processing and Tau expression in iPSC-derived neurons. *Hum Mol Genet* 23: 3523 – 3536

Najm FJ, Lager AM, Zaremba A, Wyatt K, Caprariello AV, Factor DC, Karl RT, Maeda T, Miller RH, Tesar PJ (2013) Transcription factor-mediated reprogramming of fibroblasts to expandable, myelinogenic oligodendrocyte progenitor cells. *Nat Biotechnol* 31: 426 – 433

Nakano T, Ando S, Takata N, Kawada M, Muguruma K, Sekiguchi K, Saito K, Yonemura S, Eiraku M, Sasai Y (2012) Self-formation of optic cups and storable stratified neural retina from human ESCs. *Cell Stem Cell* 10: 771 – 785

Nayak D, Roth TL, McGavern DB (2014) Microglia development and function. *Annu Rev Immunol* 32: 367 – 402

Nguyen HN, Byers B, Cord B, Shcheglovitov A, Byrne J, Gujar P, Kee K, Schule B, Dolmetsch RE, Langston W, Palmer TD, Pera RR (2011) LRRK2 mutant iPSC-derived DA neurons demonstrate increased susceptibility to oxidative stress. *Cell Stem Cell* 8: 267 – 280

Niu W, Zang T, Zou Y, Fang S, Smith DK, Bachoo R, Zhang CL (2013) *In vivo* reprogramming of astrocytes to neuroblasts in the adult brain. *Nat Cell Biol* 15: 1164 – 1175

Pang ZP, Yang N, Vierbuchen T, Ostermeier A, Fuentes DR, Yang TQ, Citri A, Sebastiano V, Marro S, Sudhof TC, Wernig M (2011) Induction of human neuronal cells by defined transcription factors. *Nature* 476: 220 – 223

Park IH, Arora N, Huo H, Maherali N, Ahfeldt T, Shimamura A, Lensch MW, Cowan C, Hochedlinger K, Daley GQ (2008) Disease-specific induced pluripotent stem cells. *Cell* 134: 877 – 886

Pasca SP, Portmann T, Voineagu I, Yazawa M, Shcheglovitov A, Pasca AM, Cord B, Palmer TD, Chikahisa S, Nishino S, Bernstein JA, Hallmayer J, Geschwind DH, Dolmetsch RE (2011) Using iPSC-derived neurons to uncover cellular phenotypes associated with Timothy syndrome. *Nat Med* 17: 1657 – 1662

Pasinelli P, Brown RH (2006) Molecular biology of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: insights from genetics. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 7: 710 – 723

Paulsen Bda S, de Moraes Maciel R, Galina A, Souza da Silveira M, dos Santos Souza C, Drummond H, Nascimento Pozzatto E, Silva H Jr, Chicaybam L, Massuda R, Setti-Perdigao P, Bonamino M, Belmonte-de-Abreu PS, Castro NG, Brentani H, Rehen SK (2012) Altered oxygen metabolism associated to neurogenesis of induced pluripotent stem cells derived from a schizophrenic patient. *Cell Transplant* 21: 1547 – 1559

Pedrosa E, Sandler V, Shah A, Carroll R, Chang C, Rockowitz S, Guo X, Zheng D, Lachman HM (2011) Development of patient-specific neurons in schizophrenia using induced pluripotent stem cells. *J Neurogenet* 25: 88 – 103

Pfisterer U, Kirkeby A, Torper O, Wood J, Nelander J, Dufour A, Bjorklund A, Lindvall O, Jakobsson J, Parmar M (2011) Direct conversion of human fibroblasts to dopaminergic neurons. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 108: 10343 – 10348

Raitano S, Ordovas L, De Muynck L, Guo W, Espuny-Camacho I, Geraerts M, Khurana S, Vanuytsel K, Toth BI, Voets T, Vandenberghe R, Cathomen T, Van Den Bosch L, Vanderhaeghen P, Van Damme P, Verfaillie CM (2015) Restoration of progranulin expression rescues cortical neuron generation in an induced pluripotent stem cell model of frontotemporal dementia. *Stem Cell Rep* 4: 16 – 24

Reinhardt P, Schmid B, Burbulla LF, Schondorf DC, Wagner L, Glatza M, Hoing S, Hargus G, Heck SA, Dhingra A, Wu G, Muller S, Brockmann K, Kluba T, Maisel M, Kruger R, Berg D, Tsytsyura Y, Thiel CS, Psathaki OE *et al* (2013) Genetic correction of a LRRK2 mutation in human iPSCs links parkinsonian neurodegeneration to ERK-dependent changes in gene expression. *Cell Stem Cell* 12: 354 – 367

Ricciardi S, Ungaro F, Hambrock M, Rademacher N, Stefanelli G, Brambilla D, Sessa A, Magagnotti C, Bachi A, Giarda E, Verpelli C, Kilstrup-Nielsen C, Sala C, Kalscheuer VM, Broccoli V (2012) CDKL5 ensures excitatory synapse stability by reinforcing NGL-1-PSD95 interaction in the postsynaptic compartment and is impaired in patient iPSC-derived neurons. *Nat Cell Biol* 14: 911 – 923

Ring KL, Tong LM, Balestra ME, Javier R, Andrews-Zwilling Y, Li G, Walker D, Zhang WR, Kreitzer AC, Huang Y (2012) Direct reprogramming of mouse and human fibroblasts into multipotent neural stem cells with a single factor. *Cell Stem Cell* 11: 100 – 109

Robicsek O, Karry R, Petit I, Salman-Kesner N, Muller FJ, Klein E, Aberdam D, Ben-Shachar D (2013) Abnormal neuronal differentiation and mitochondrial dysfunction in hair follicle-derived induced pluripotent stem cells of schizophrenia patients. *Mol Psychiatry* 18: 1067 – 1076

Roybon L, Lamas NJ, Garcia-Diaz A, Yang EJ, Sattler R, Jackson-Lewis V, Kim YA, Kachel CA, Rothstein JD, Przedborski S, Wichterle H, Henderson CE (2013) Human stem cell-derived spinal cord astrocytes with defined mature or reactive phenotypes. *Cell Rep* 4: 1035 – 1048

Rubin LL (2008) Stem cells and drug discovery: the beginning of a new era? *Cell* 132: 549 – 552

Ruckh JM, Zhao JW, Shadrach JL, van Wijngaarden P, Rao TN, Wagers AJ, Franklin RJ (2012) Rejuvenation of regeneration in the aging central nervous system. *Cell Stem Cell* 10: 96 – 103

Ryan SD, Dolatabadi N, Chan SF, Zhang X, Akhtar MW, Parker J, Soldner F, Sunico CR, Nagar S, Talantova M, Lee B, Lopez K, Nutter A, Shan B, Molokanova E, Zhang Y, Han X, Nakamura T, Masliah E, Yates JR III *et al* (2013) Isogenic human iPSC Parkinson's model shows nitrosative stress-induced dysfunction in MEF2-PGC1alpha transcription. *Cell* 155: 1351 – 1364

Sanchez-Danes A, Richaud-Patin Y, Carballo-Carbajal I, Jimenez-Delgado S, Caig C, Mora S, Di Guglielmo C, Ezquerra M, Patel B, Giralt A, Canals JM, Memo M, Alberch J, Lopez-Barneo J, Vila M, Cuervo AM, Tolosa E, Consiglio A, Raya A (2012) Disease-specific phenotypes in dopamine neurons from human iPS-based models of genetic and sporadic Parkinson's disease. *EMBO Mol Med* 4: 380 – 395

Sanders LH, Laganiere J, Cooper O, Mak SK, Vu BJ, Huang YA, Paschon DE, Vangipuram M, Sundararajan R, Urnov FD, Langston JW, Gregory PD, Zhang HS, Greenamyre JT, Isacson O, Schule B (2014) LRRK2 mutations cause mitochondrial DNA damage in iPSC-derived neural cells from Parkinson's disease patients: reversal by gene correction. *Neurobiol Dis* 62: 381 – 386

Sandoe J, Eggan K (2013) Opportunities and challenges of pluripotent stem cell neurodegenerative disease models. *Nat Neurosci* 16: 780 – 789

Sareen D, Ebert AD, Heins BM, McGivern JV, Ornelas L, Svendsen CN (2012) Inhibition of apoptosis blocks human motor neuron cell death in a stem cell model of spinal muscular atrophy. *PLoS ONE* 7: e39113

Sareen D, O'Rourke JG, Meera P, Muhammad AK, Grant S, Simpkinson M, Bell S, Carmona S, Ornelas L, Sahabian A, Gendron T, Petrucelli L, Baughn M, Ravits J, Harms MB, Rigo F, Bennett CF, Otis TS, Svendsen CN, Baloh RH (2013) Targeting RNA foci in iPSC-derived motor neurons from ALS patients with a C9ORF72 repeat expansion. *Sci Transl Med* 5: 208ra149

Seibler P, Graziotto J, Jeong H, Simunovic F, Klein C, Krainc D (2011) Mitochondrial Parkin recruitment is impaired in neurons derived from mutant PINK1 induced pluripotent stem cells. *J Neurosci* 31: 5970 – 5976

Serio A, Bilican B, Barmada SJ, Ando DM, Zhao C, Siller R, Burr K, Haghi G, Story D, Nishimura AL, Carrasco MA, Phatnani HP, Shum C, Wilmut I, Maniatis T, Shaw CE, Finkbeiner S, Chandran S (2013) Astrocyte pathology and the absence of non-cell autonomy in an induced pluripotent stem cell model of TDP-43 proteinopathy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 110: 4697 – 4702

Shcheglovitov A, Shcheglovitova O, Yazawa M, Portmann T, Shu R, Sebastiano V, Krawisz A, Froehlich W, Bernstein JA, Hallmayer JF, Dolmetsch RE (2013) SHANK3 and IGF1 restore synaptic deficits in neurons from 22q13 deletion syndrome patients. *Nature* 503: 267 – 271

Sheng C, Zheng Q, Wu J, Xu Z, Sang L, Wang L, Guo C, Zhu W, Tong M, Liu L, Li W, Liu ZH, Zhao XY, Wang L, Chen Z, Zhou Q (2012a) Generation of dopaminergic neurons directly from mouse fibroblasts and fibroblast-derived neural progenitors. *Cell Res* 22: 769 – 772

Sheng C, Zheng Q, Wu J, Xu Z, Wang L, Li W, Zhang H, Zhao XY, Liu L, Wang Z, Guo C, Wu HJ, Liu Z, Wang L, He S, Wang XJ, Chen Z, Zhou Q (2012b) Direct reprogramming of Sertoli cells into multipotent neural stem cells by defined factors. *Cell Res* 22: 208 – 218

Sheridan SD, Theriault KM, Reis SA, Zhou F, Madison JM, Daheron L, Loring JF, Haggarty SJ (2011) Epigenetic characterization of the FMR1 gene and aberrant neurodevelopment in human induced pluripotent stem cell models of fragile X syndrome. *PLoS ONE* 6: e26203

Shi Y, Kirwan P, Livesey FJ (2012a) Directed differentiation of human pluripotent stem cells to cerebral cortex neurons and neural networks. *Nat Protoc* 7: 1836 – 1846

Shi Y, Kirwan P, Smith J, Robinson HP, Livesey FJ (2012b) Human cerebral cortex development from pluripotent stem cells to functional excitatory synapses. *Nat Neurosci* 15: 477 – 486, s471

Singh R, Shen W, Kuai D, Martin JM, Guo X, Smith MA, Perez ET, Phillips MJ, Simonett JM, Wallace KA, Verhoeven AD, Capowski EE, Zhang X, Yin Y, Halbach PJ, Fishman GA, Wright LS, Pattnaik BR, Gamm DM (2013) iPS cell modeling of Best disease: insights into the pathophysiology of an inherited macular degeneration. *Hum Mol Genet* 22: 593 – 607

Son EY, Ichida JK, Wainger BJ, Toma JS, Rafuse VF, Woolf CJ, Eggan K (2011) Conversion of mouse and human fibroblasts into functional spinal motor neurons. *Cell Stem Cell* 9: 205 – 218

Sproul AA, Jacob S, Pre D, Kim SH, Nestor MW, Navarro-Sobrino M, Santa-Maria I, Zimmer M, Aubry S, Steele JW, Kahler DJ, Dranovsky A, Arancio O, Crary JF, Gandy S, Noggle SA (2014) Characterization and molecular profiling of PSEN1 familial Alzheimer's disease iPSC-derived neural progenitors. *PLoS ONE* 9: e84547

Sreedharan J, Brown RH Jr (2013) Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: problems and prospects. *Ann Neurol* 74: 309 – 316

Stiles J, Jernigan TL (2010) The basics of brain development. *Neuropsychol Rev* 20: 327 – 348

Su YC, Qi X (2013) Inhibition of excessive mitochondrial fission reduced aberrant autophagy and neuronal damage caused by LRRK2 G2019S mutation. *Hum Mol Genet* 22: 4545 – 4561

Takahashi K, Tanabe K, Ohnuki M, Narita M, Ichisaka T, Tomoda K, Yamanaka S (2007) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from adult human fibroblasts by defined factors. *Cell* 131: 861 – 872

Takazawa T, Croft GF, Amoroso MW, Studer L, Wichterle H, Macdermott AB (2012) Maturation of spinal motor neurons derived from human embryonic stem cells. *PLoS ONE* 7: e40154

Thier M, Worsdorfer P, Lakes YB, Gorris R, Herms S, Opitz T, Seiferling D, Quandel T, Hoffmann P, Nothen MM, Brustle O, Edenhofer F (2012) Direct conversion of fibroblasts into stably expandable neural stem cells. *Cell Stem Cell* 10: 473 – 479

Tiscornia G, Vivas EL, Matalonga L, Berniakovich I, Barragan Monasterio M, Eguizabal C, Gort L, Gonzalez F, Ortiz Mellet C, Garcia Fernandez JM, Ribes A, Veiga A, Izpisua Belmonte JC (2013) Neuronopathic Gaucher's disease: induced pluripotent stem cells for disease modelling and testing chaperone activity of small compounds. *Hum Mol Genet* 22: 633 – 645

Tremblay C, Achim AM, Macoir J, Monetta L (2013) The heterogeneity of cognitive symptoms in Parkinson's disease: a meta-analysis. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 84: 1265 – 1272

Trilck M, Hubner R, Seibler P, Klein C, Rolfs A, Frech MJ (2013) Niemann-Pick type C1 patient-specific induced pluripotent stem cells display disease specific hallmarks. *Orphanet J Rare Dis* 8: 144

Tsunemoto RK, Eade KT, Blanchard JW, Baldwin KK (2015) Forward engineering neuronal diversity using direct reprogramming. *EMBO J* 34: 1445 – 1455

Tucker BA, Scheetz TE, Mullins RF, DeLuca AP, Hoffmann JM, Johnston RM, Jacobson SG, Sheffield VC, Stone EM (2011) Exome sequencing and analysis of induced pluripotent stem cells identify the cilia-related gene male germ cell-associated kinase (MAK) as a cause of retinitis pigmentosa. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 108: E569 – E576

Tucker BA, Mullins RF, Streb LM, Anfinson K, Eyestone ME, Kaalberg E, Riker MJ, Drack AV, Braun TA, Stone EM (2013) Patient-specific iPSC-derived

photoreceptor precursor cells as a means to investigate retinitis pigmentosa. *eLife* 2: e00824

Victor MB, Richner M, Hermanstyne TO, Ransdell JL, Sobieski C, Deng PY, Klyachko VA, Nerbonne JM, Yoo AS (2014) Generation of human striatal neurons by microRNA-dependent direct conversion of fibroblasts. *Neuron* 84: 311 – 323

Wainger BJ, Kiskinis E, Mellin C, Wiskow O, Han SS, Sandoe J, Perez NP, Williams LA, Lee S, Boulting G, Berry JD, Brown RH Jr, Cudkowicz ME, Bean BP, Eggan K, Woolf CJ (2014) Intrinsic membrane hyperexcitability of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis patient-derived motor neurons. *Cell Rep* 7: 1 – 11

Wainger BJ, Buttermore ED, Oliveira JT, Mellin C, Lee S, Saber WA, Wang AJ, Ichida JK, Chiu IM, Barrett L, Huebner EA, Bilgin C, Tsujimoto N, Brenneis C, Kapur K, Rubin LL, Eggan K, Woolf CJ (2015) Modeling pain *in vitro* using nociceptor neurons reprogrammed from fibroblasts. *Nat Neurosci* 18: 17 – 24

Wen X, Tan W, Westergard T, Krishnamurthy K, Markandaiah SS, Shi Y, Lin S, Shneider NA, Monaghan J, Pandey UB, Pasinelli P, Ichida JK, Trotti D (2014a) Antisense proline-arginine RAN dipeptides linked to C9ORF72-ALS/FTD form toxic nuclear aggregates that initiate *in vitro* and *in vivo* neuronal death. *Neuron* 84: 1213 – 1225

Wen Z, Nguyen HN, Guo Z, Lalli MA, Wang X, Su Y, Kim NS, Yoon KJ, Shin J, Zhang C, Makri G, Nauen D, Yu H, Guzman E, Chiang CH, Yoritomo N, Kaibuchi K, Zou J, Christian KM, Cheng L *et al* (2014b) Synaptic dysregulation in a human iPS cell model of mental disorders. *Nature* 515: 414 – 418

Williams LA, Davis-Dusenbery BN, Eggan KC (2012) SnapShot: directed differentiation of pluripotent stem cells. *Cell* 149: 1174 – 1174.e1171

Williams EC, Zhong X, Mohamed A, Li R, Liu Y, Dong Q, Ananiev GE, Mok JC, Lin BR, Lu J, Chiao C, Cherney R, Li H, Zhang SC, Chang Q (2014) Mutant astrocytes differentiated from Rett syndrome patients-specific iPSCs have adverse effects on wild-type neurons. *Hum Mol Genet* 23: 2968 – 2980

Xue Y, Ouyang K, Huang J, Zhou Y, Ouyang H, Li H, Wang G, Wu Q, Wei C, Bi Y, Jiang L, Cai Z, Sun H, Zhang K, Zhang Y, Chen J, Fu XD (2013) Direct conversion of fibroblasts to neurons by reprogramming PTB-regulated microRNA circuits. *Cell* 152: 82 – 96

Yagi T, Ito D, Okada Y, Akamatsu W, Nihei Y, Yoshizaki T, Yamanaka S, Okano H, Suzuki N (2011) Modeling familial Alzheimer's disease with induced pluripotent stem cells. *Hum Mol Genet* 20: 4530 – 4539

Yan Y, Yang D, Zarnowska ED, Du Z, Werbel B, Valliere C, Pearce RA, Thomson JA, Zhang SC (2005) Directed differentiation of dopaminergic neuronal subtypes from human embryonic stem cells. *Stem Cells* 23: 781 – 790

Yang N, Zuchero JB, Ahlenius H, Marro S, Ng YH, Vierbuchen T, Hawkins JS, Geissler R, Barres BA, Wernig M (2013a) Generation of oligodendroglial cells by direct lineage conversion. *Nat Biotechnol* 31: 434 – 439

Yang YM, Gupta SK, Kim KJ, Powers BE, Cerqueira A, Wainger BJ, Ngo HD, Rosowski KA, Schein PA, Ackeifi CA, Arvanites AC, Davidow LS, Woolf CJ, Rubin LL (2013b) A small molecule screen in stem-cell-derived motor neurons identifies a kinase inhibitor as a candidate therapeutic for ALS. *Cell Stem Cell* 12: 713 – 726

Yao Y, Cui X, Al-Ramahi I, Sun X, Li B, Hou J, Difiglia M, Palacino J, Wu ZY, Ma L, Botas J, Lu B (2015) A striatal-enriched intronic GPCR modulates huntingtin levels and toxicity. *eLife* 4: e05449

Yoo AS, Sun AX, Li L, Shcheglovitov A, Portmann T, Li Y, Lee-Messer C, Dolmetsch RE, Tsien RW, Crabtree GR (2011) MicroRNA-mediated conversion of human fibroblasts to neurons. *Nature* 476: 228 – 231

Yoon KJ, Nguyen HN, Ursini G, Zhang F, Kim NS, Wen Z, Makri G, Nauen D, Shin JH, Park Y, Chung R, Pekle E, Zhang C, Towe M, Hussaini SM, Lee Y, Rujescu D, St Clair D, Kleinman JE, Hyde TM *et al* (2014) Modeling a genetic risk for schizophrenia in iPSCs and mice reveals neural stem cell deficits associated with adherens junctions and polarity. *Cell Stem Cell* 15: 79 – 91

Yu J, Vodyanik MA, Smuga-Otto K, Antosiewicz-Bourget J, Frane JL, Tian S, Nie J, Jonsdottir GA, Ruotti V, Stewart R, Slukvin II, Thomson JA (2007) Induced pluripotent stem cell lines derived from human somatic cells. *Science* 318: 1917 – 1920

Yu DX, Di Giorgio FP, Yao J, Marchetto MC, Brennand K, Wright R, Mei A, McHenry L, Lisuk D, Grasmick JM, Silberman P, Silberman G, Jappelli R, Gage FH (2014) Modeling hippocampal neurogenesis using human pluripotent stem cells. *Stem Cell Rep* 2: 295 – 310

Zeng H, Guo M, Martins-Taylor K, Wang X, Zhang Z, Park JW, Zhan S, Kronenberg MS, Lichtler A, Liu HX, Chen FP, Yue L, Li XJ, Xu RH (2010) Specification of region-specific neurons including forebrain glutamatergic neurons from human induced pluripotent stem cells. *PLoS ONE* 5: e11853

Zhong Z, Ilieva H, Hallagan L, Bell R, Singh I, Paquette N, Thiyagarajan M, Deane R, Fernandez JA, Lane S, Zlokovic AB, Liu T, Griffin JH, Chow N, Castellino FJ, Stojanovic K, Cleveland DW, Zlokovic BV (2009) Activated protein C therapy slows ALS-like disease in mice by transcriptionally inhibiting SOD1 in motor neurons and microglia cells. *J Clin Invest* 119: 3437 – 3449

Zhou Q, Brown J, Kanarek A, Rajagopal J, Melton DA (2008) *In vivo* reprogramming of adult pancreatic exocrine cells to beta-cells. *Nature* 455: 627 – 632

Zhu PP, Denton KR, Pierson TM, Li XJ, Blackstone C (2014) Pharmacologic rescue of axon growth defects in a human iPSC model of hereditary spastic paraplegia SPG3A. *Hum Mol Genet* 23: 5638 – 5648

Review

THE EMBO JOURNAL

Focus: Induced Pluripotency & Cellular Reprogramming

Generating human intestinal tissues from pluripotent stem cells to study development and disease

Katie L Sinagoga[1] & James M Wells[1,2,*]

Abstract

As one of the largest and most functionally complex organs of the human body, the intestines are primarily responsible for the breakdown and uptake of macromolecules from the lumen and the subsequent excretion of waste from the body. However, the intestine is also an endocrine organ, regulating digestion, metabolism, and feeding behavior. Intricate neuronal, lymphatic, immune, and vascular systems are integrated into the intestine and are required for its digestive and endocrine functions. In addition, the gut houses an extensive population of microbes that play roles in digestion, global metabolism, barrier function, and host–parasite interactions. With such an extensive array of cell types working and performing in one essential organ, derivation of functional intestinal tissues from human pluripotent stem cells (PSCs) represents a significant challenge. Here we will discuss the intricate developmental processes and cell types that are required for assembly of this highly complex organ and how embryonic processes, particularly morphogenesis, have been harnessed to direct differentiation of PSCs into 3-dimensional human intestinal organoids (HIOs) *in vitro*. We will further describe current uses of HIOs in development and disease research and how additional tissue complexity might be engineered into HIOs for better functionality and disease modeling.

Keywords endoderm; intestinal development; organoids; stem cells; tissue engineering

DOI 10.15252/embj.201490686 | Received 27 November 2014 | Revised 11 February 2015 | Accepted 9 March 2015 | Published online 19 March 2015

The EMBO Journal (2015) 34: 1149–1163

Introduction

The human intestine averages 8 m in length (Hounnou *et al*, 2002) with an epithelial surface area of 250 m^2, roughly equivalent to the area of a tennis court. Epithelial surface area is amplified by the presence of villi, which are finger-like projections that protrude into the lumen of the intestine and microvilli, which are hair-like structures on the surface of absorptive epithelial cells (enterocytes). The epithelial morphogenesis that occurs in late embryonic and early postnatal stages also creates the crypts of Lieberkühn at the base of the villi. Crypts contain a specialized subset of intestinal cells including stem and progenitor cells that constantly renew the intestinal epithelium. In the mouse, the entire intestinal epithelium is turned over once every 5 days. There are two major cell types in the intestinal epithelium: the secretory cells and absorptive enterocytes. Comprising 90% of the epithelium, the enterocytes are responsible for the uptake and subsequent distribution of nutrients to the blood vasculature. The three secretory lineages are the hormone-secreting enteroendocrine cells (EECs), the mucus-producing goblet cells, and the Paneth cells in the crypt, which secrete antimicrobial peptides and help maintain the stem cell niche (Fig 3).

The intestine is comprised of two major segments, the small and large intestines. Proximally located, the small intestine is further subdivided into the duodenum, jejunum, and ileum, while the distal large intestine includes the cecum and colon. Morphologically, the proximal intestine can be distinguished by long, leaf-like villi, which become shorter and flatter in the colonic epithelium. These morphological changes reflect the unique functions that different segments of the intestine have in the breakdown of food and the uptake of nutrients. For example, the duodenum is responsible for acid neutralization and enzymatic breakdown of chyme from the antrum, while the jejunum is the main sight of total nutrient absorption. More distal, the ileum is responsible for bile reabsorption and the colon is the main sight of short-chain fatty acid (SCFA) production. These examples are only a few of the many roles each region plays in digestion and absorption of nutrients. For a more comprehensive look at the digestive physiology of the intestine, refer to Gastrointestinal Anatomy and Physiology: The Essentials (Reinus & Simon, 2014). The unique structure and function of each region of the intestine only highlights the complex underlying cellular differences. These include region-specific EEC subtypes as well as nutrient transporters and sub-epithelial populations that aid in the function of each region.

Infection, cancer, inflammation, intestinal motility disorders, and malabsorptive diarrhea are among the most prevalent human maladies. As a result, there have been many studies in model organisms aimed at understanding the development, homeostasis, regeneration,

1 Division of Developmental Biology, Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center, Cincinnati, OH, USA
2 Division of Endocrinology, Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center, Cincinnati, OH, USA
*Corresponding author. Tel: +1 513 636 8767; E-mail: james.wells@cchmc.org

and pathologies of the intestinal tract. However, until recently there were no *in vitro* systems available that adequately modeled the development and pathophysiology of the gut. In the past few years, several approaches have been developed to generate human intestinal tissues *in vitro*. One approach used intestinal biopsies from patients, from which are derived from primary cultures of intestinal epithelium (Sato *et al*, 2011), which has been extensively reviewed elsewhere (Sato & Clevers, 2013). This review focuses on another approach using directed differentiation of human pluripotent stem cells (PSCs) into three-dimensional, human intestinal organoids (HIOs) (Spence *et al*, 2011b). HIOs, generated either from embryonic stem cells or from induced pluripotent stem cell lines (iPSCs), are being used to study many aspects of human intestinal development, including cell–cell interactions, the stem cell niche, patterning of the intestine, the differentiation of multiple cell types from intestinal stem cells (ISCs), and intestinal diseases. Below we will outline our current knowledge of intestinal development, function, and disease and discuss how HIO-based models are currently being used to understand these processes in a human context.

Development of the intestines *in vivo* and in pluripotent stem cell cultures

Endoderm formation

The directed differentiation of PSCs into intestinal tissue *in vitro* was achieved by temporally manipulating the signaling pathways that are involved in normal intestinal development *in vivo*. This begins with formation of the endoderm germ layer during gastrulation (see reviews Zorn & Wells, 2007, 2009; Spence *et al*, 2011a). At the molecular level, endoderm formation is a highly conserved process in mouse, fish, frog, and humans, requiring the TGF-beta family member Nodal. Nodal signaling launches a cascade of gene expression to both initiate gastrulation and direct cells into a mesoderm or endodermal fate. Adopting an endoderm fate involves downstream transcription factors including Sox17, Foxa2, Mix, Gata4/6, and Eomes (Sinner *et al*, 2006; Zorn & Wells, 2007, 2009). Activation of the Nodal pathway, with either Nodal protein or the Nodal mimetic Activin, can direct differentiation of mouse and human ES cells into definitive endoderm *in vitro* (Kubo *et al*, 2004; D'Amour *et al*, 2005) (Fig 1A). Cultures of definitive endoderm are multipotent and can give rise to numerous lineages including thyroid, lung, stomach, pancreas, liver, and intestine (Lumelsky *et al*, 2001; D'Amour *et al*, 2006; Cai *et al*, 2007; Cao *et al*, 2011; Spence *et al*, 2011b; Antonica *et al*, 2012; Longmire *et al*, 2012; Mou *et al*, 2012; Takebe *et al*, 2013; McCracken *et al*, 2014).

Anterior–posterior patterning of the endoderm and the intestine

At the end of gastrulation in chicks, mice, and humans, DE is a two-dimensional sheet of cells. DE is subsequently patterned along the anterior–posterior axis and undergoes morphogenesis into a primitive gut tube, from which all of the endodermal organs will arise. The anterior section of the tube is called the foregut and the posterior sections are the mid- and hindgut, which give rise to the small and large intestines. A number of signaling pathways are involved in posterior endoderm patterning, including Fgf, Wnt, retinoic acid (RA) (Huang *et al*, 1998; Stafford & Prince, 2002; Niederreither *et al*, 2003; Wang *et al*, 2006b; Bayha *et al*, 2009), and BMP. Multiple Wnt ligands are expressed in the posterior of gastrula stage vertebrate embryos and the role of Wnt/β-catenin signaling at this stage of development is to promote a posterior fate, while inhibiting an anterior fate in the endoderm (McLin *et al*, 2007; Sherwood, 2009). Likewise, FGF and BMP ligands that are expressed in the posterior act on the endoderm to promote a posterior fate in chick and mouse embryos (Roberts *et al*, 1995; Wells & Melton, 2000; Tiso *et al*, 2002; Kumar *et al*, 2003; Dessimoz *et al*, 2006; Rankin *et al*, 2011). WNT and FGF act in part by regulating the transcription of the Caudal homeobox (Cdx) family of transcription factors that play an evolutionarily conserved role to specify embryonic posterior fate. The Cdx family of genes in vertebrates (*Cdx1, Cdx2, Cdx4*) work in tandem with FGF signaling to promote the expression of posterior Hox genes *Hoxa7* and *Hoxb9* (Pownall *et al*, 1998; Ho *et al*, 1999; Zorn *et al*, 1999; Ehrman & Yutzey, 2001; Bel-Vialar *et al*, 2002; Spence *et al*, 2011b; Chen *et al*, 2013). These data indicate that Wnt/β-catenin and FGF signaling regulate the posteriorization of endoderm through activation of the *Cdx* genes.

The pathways that govern posterior fate of endoderm in embryos can also direct human pluripotent stem cell-derived definitive endoderm into a posterior fate (McCracken *et al*, 2011; Spence *et al*, 2011b; Chen *et al*, 2013). In one example, the combined activation of WNT and FGF was sufficient to direct human definitive endoderm (DE) cultures to adopt a hindgut identity as evidenced by the broad expression of *CDX2* (McCracken *et al*, 2011; Spence *et al*, 2011b). This work further identified that maximal and sustained *CDX2* expression required the activity of both FGF and WNT signaling and that posterior specification required 4 days of exposure to FGF/WNT (Spence *et al*, 2011b). Together, these findings demonstrate that embryonic studies inform our approaches to direct differentiation of PSCs into posterior cell types and highlight how PSC cultures can be used to identify new developmental mechanisms regulating endoderm organogenesis.

In addition to their involvement in establishing early posterior endoderm fate, FGF, WNT, BMP, and Cdx factors play multiple roles at later stages of intestinal development including intestinal elongation, segment identity, and growth. In mice, disruption of Wnt/β-catenin signaling by deletion of the transcriptional cofactors Tcf1 and Tcf4 ($Tcf1^{-/-};Tcf4^{-/-}$) resulted in a loss of *Cdx2* expression and ectopic *Sox2* expression at e13.5 (Gregorieff *et al*, 2004), a phenotype that is similar to deletion of *Cdx2* in the mid-gestation embryo (Grainger *et al*, 2010). Deletion of Wnt5a caused shortening of both the small and large intestines as well as disruption of apical–basal polarity of the epithelium (Yamaguchi *et al*, 1999; Cervantes *et al*, 2009). BMP ligands that are expressed in the posterior mesoderm act in a signaling loop with Sonic Hedgehog from the endoderm to regulate posterior *Hox13* gene expression in the hindgut of chick embryos (Roberts *et al*, 1995). Lastly, FGF10 signaling, mediated through FGFR2IIIb, is involved in the development of several regions of the intestine and embryos with defective FGF10 signaling have cecal defects and colonic atresia (Burns *et al*, 2004; Sala *et al*, 2006). It should be possible to manipulate these pathways to regulate regional identity of HIOs, although this has not yet been reported.

Intestinal morphogenesis in vivo *and in HIO cultures: the importance of 3-dimensional structure for function*

The initial transition from a two-dimensional sheet of DE to a three-dimensional tube occurs shortly after gastrulation. While BMP,

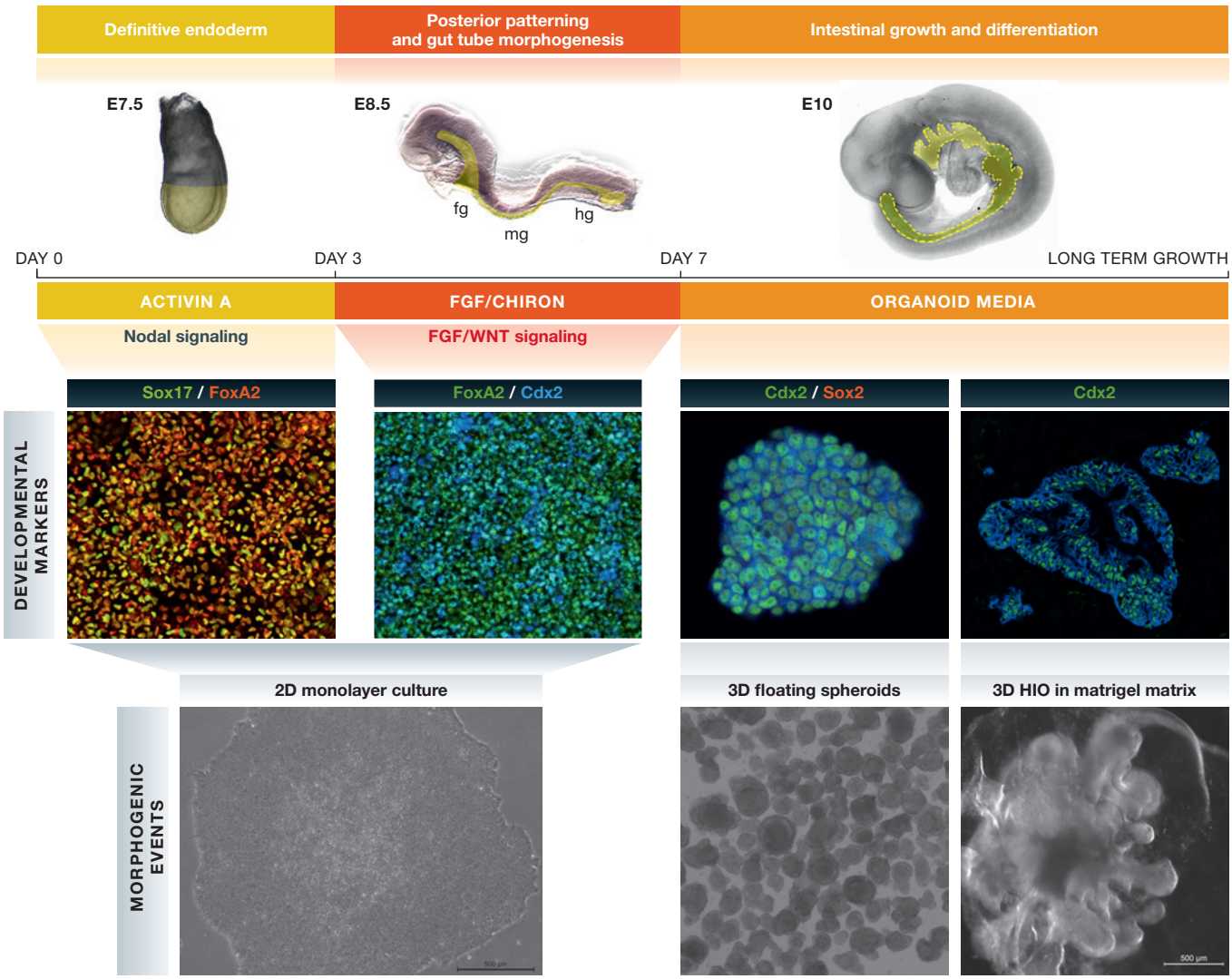


Figure 1. Generation of HIOs from PSCs.
Early stages of embryonic development guide the generation of HIOs from pluripotent stem cells into intestine. Definitive endoderm is established by the end of gastrulation (e7.5 in the mouse) and requires TGFβ molecule Nodal signaling. Differentiation of PSCs into definitive endoderm is achieved using the Nodal mimetic Activin A, which promotes differentiation into definitive endoderm as marked by Foxa2 (green) and Sox17 (red). The 2-dimensional sheet of DE folds to form a 3-dimensional primitive gut tube that is functionally subdivided along the anterior–posterior axis into a foregut, mid-gut, and hindgut (e8.5 in the mouse). Morphogenesis and posteriorization are induced in DE cultures via activation of FGF/WNT signaling. This causes the 2-D endoderm monolayers to undergo morphogenesis to form 3-D spheroids that additionally express the posterior marker CDX2. Spheroids that are grown in 3-D culture conditions for 4 weeks form HIOs that express CDX2 and have all major secretory and absorptive lineages of the fetal intestine. HIOs can be routinely split and re-plated in fresh 3-D matrigel every 2 weeks and have been passaged in this manner for up to a year.

WNT, and FGF pathways were known to function in endoderm posteriorization, how they act to regulate gut tube morphogenesis is poorly understood. It was known that non-canonical Wnt signaling may play a role in posterior development and intestinal morphogenesis, promoting elongation of the endodermal hindgut during development (Yamaguchi *et al*, 1999; Cervantes *et al*, 2009; Zhang *et al*, 2013). However, the first evidence that FGF and canonical WNT may cooperate during gut tube morphogenesis came from HIO studies. In this case, the combined activities of FGF4 and canonical WNT signaling promoted the morphogenesis of a 2-D sheet of DE into 3-D gut tube-like structures, termed gut tube spheroids (McCracken *et al*, 2011; Spence *et al*, 2011b). While the molecular basis for how FGF and WNT act to promote gut tube morphogenesis is not known, the ease of manipulating and imaging HIO cultures should allow for a better understanding of this process.

Another key event that occurs during hindgut tube formation is the assembly of a primitive mesenchyme around the gut tube epithelium. In HIO cultures, a mesenchymal layer assembles next to the gut tube epithelium during morphogenesis, although it is not known which cell types drive morphogenetic processes. The source of the mesenchyme in these cultures is a small population of mesoderm that expands in response to FGF4. It is also possible that FGF drives morphogenesis through directed cell migration of mesoderm, as has been observed in chick, where FGF4 and 8 act as

chemoattractants and repellants to direct the posterior migration of hindgut mesoderm (Lickert & Kemler, 2002; Yang *et al*, 2002; Kinkel *et al*, 2008; Bayha *et al*, 2009).

After gut tube formation *in vivo*, there are a number of morphogenetic events that result in the formation of intestinal villi with differentiated columnar epithelium (Spence *et al*, 2011a). The simple cuboidal epithelium of the e8.5 gut tube expands and transitions into a pseudostratified epithelium by e12.5 (Grosse *et al*, 2011). The epithelium transitions into a columnar type of epithelium with folds that extend into the lumen, the first stage in villus morphogenesis. Mesenchyme has been implicated in villus morphogenesis in mice, where PDGFRA-positive mesenchymal clusters influence the formation of villi through Hedgehog (Hh)-mediated signaling (Karlsson *et al*, 2000; Walton *et al*, 2012). In addition, the formation of smooth muscle layers and the resulting tension on the epithelium has been shown to be required for both early and later stages of villus morphogenesis in chickens (Shyer *et al*, 2013).

When grown in a three-dimensional matrix, PSC derived hindgut spheroids transition through very similar stages of intestinal morphogenesis *in vitro* resulting in the formation of human intestinal organoids (HIOs) (Fig 1). Similar to an e9 gut tube, day 0 spheroids start as a cuboidal epithelium surrounded by a primitive mesenchyme. However, after 14 days of culture, HIOs form a pseudostratified epithelium that resembles a e12.5 mouse intestine. By 28 days, HIOs contain columnar epithelium with protrusions into the organoid lumen, similar to early villus-like structures. As the epithelium transitions through these stages, the mesenchyme also differentiates into layers containing smooth muscle cells, subepithelial fibroblasts, and fibroblasts (Spence *et al*, 2011b). As with other organoid systems (reviewed in Lancaster and Knoblich, 2014), there appears to be some level of 'self assembly' involved in the formation of HIOs. This suggests that communication between the epithelium and the mesenchyme during HIO development may resemble the signaling that occurs during gut development *in vivo*. Additionally, these signals are still needed in adult intestinal organoid systems and the communication has been shown to influence the epithelial ISCs and their niche in these culture conditions (Ootani *et al*, 2009). Therefore, these organoids represent a new model to study human intestinal epithelial morphogenesis, stem cell differentiation, and cell–cell interactions.

Differentiation and function of intestinal subtypes

The major differentiated cell types in the intestine can be detected by e16.5 in the mouse, just after villus morphogenesis. These include the absorptive enterocytes, and two secretory cell types: goblet cells and enteroendocrine cells (Fig 3). Paneth and tuft cells arise after birth along with the formation of the crypts of Lieberkuhn and the establishment of adult ISCs. Absorptive enterocytes (small intestine) and colonocytes (large intestine) (Cheng & Leblond, 1974) function to transport peptides, ions, water, sugars, lipids, B12, and reabsorb bile acids. These cells contain microvilli on their apical surface to increase absorptive surface area and act as a protective brush border from the external environment (Mooseker, 1985). Though Notch signaling has been known to be the regulator between absorptive and secretory fates (Fre *et al*, 2005; Stanger *et al*, 2005; Zecchini *et al*, 2005), little is actually known about the specific genes required for enterocyte differentiation. Rather, the presence of Notch allows inhibition of Atoh1, a pro-secretory transcription factor, and loss of the Notch effector Hes1 promotes an enterocyte fate (Jensen *et al*, 2000; Yang *et al*, 2001; Shroyer *et al*, 2007; Noah *et al*, 2011).

In the adult, Atoh1 is required for all secretory lineages: goblet cells, enteroendocrine cells (EECs), Paneth cells, and tuft cells. Downstream of Atoh1, it has been suggested that goblet and Paneth may share a common progenitor given their dependence on Gfi1, Spdef, and LkB1/STK11 (reviewed in Noah *et al*, 2011). Goblet cells function to secrete mucins in order to protect the epithelium from damaging agents such as acidity and microbes in the lumen. Though these cells are present in both the embryonic and adult intestine, goblet cells may not differentiate the same way, as Klf4 has been shown to be required for embryonic goblet cell fate but not for those differentiated postnatally (Katz *et al*, 2002; Pellegrinet *et al*, 2011). Paneth cells develop postnatally in the mouse following crypt formation, but are present in humans by the first trimester (Underwood, 2012). Secreting antimicrobial peptides, Paneth cells regulate innate intestinal immunity, protecting the ISCs from pathogens, and shaping the gut microbiome. Wnt/beta-catenin signaling and its downstream target Sox9 are essential for the specification of Paneth cells (Bastide *et al*, 2007; Mori-Akiyama *et al*, 2007). Paneth cell dysfunction is associated with progression of necrotizing enterocolitis (NEC) in premature infants, though our knowledge is limited due to a lack of proper disease models (reviewed in Underwood, 2012). Lastly, markers such as Gfi1b have identified tuft cells; however, the development and function of these cells are poorly understood. There has been some speculation that tuft cells may help neutralize the acidic chyme in the duodenum and function in chemoreception and inflammation (reviewed in Noah *et al*, 2011; Gerbe *et al*, 2012).

Enteroendocrine cells (EECs) occupy approximately 1% of the total epithelium in the intestine but secrete upwards of 15 different types of hormones. These hormones have a variety of roles that affect metabolism, the digestive process, satiety, hunger, and glucose homeostasis. The endocrine role of hormones in regulating glucose metabolism and satiety is well studied (reviewed in Strader & Woods, 2005; Deacon & Ahrén, 2011; Crespo *et al*, 2009). In both mice and humans, specification of all EECs requires the basic helix-loop-helix transcription factor Neurogenin3 (NEUROG3) (Jenny *et al*, 2002; Wang *et al*, 2006a; López-Díaz *et al*, 2007; Pinney *et al*, 2011; Rubio-Cabezas *et al*, 2011). Loss of *NEUROG3* leads to a loss of all endocrine cells in the intestine and a subsequent failure in the absorption of nutrients. Mouse studies have demonstrated that the transcription factor Neurod1 is downstream of Neurog3 and is required for the development of CCK and secretin cells (Naya *et al*, 1997; Rindi *et al*, 1999) and Arx is required for proximal subtypes CCK, GIP, and secretin, and distal subtypes PYY, GLP-1, and neurotensin (Beucher *et al*, 2012). Other TFs such as Pdx1, Nkx2.2, Pax4, and Pax6 have been shown to influence the differentiation of EECs (Larsson *et al*, 1998; Desai *et al*, 2008; Chen *et al*, 2009; Wang *et al*, 2009). Interestingly, deletion of *Foxo1* from the small intestinal epithelium caused EECs to express and secrete insulin (Talchai *et al*, 2012), suggesting that intestinal and pancreatic endocrine hormones utilize similar transcriptional machinery. Moreover, ectopic expression of *MafA*, *Pdx1*, and *Ngn3* within intestinal cell crypts led to the formation of 'neo-islets' in the intestine (Chen *et al*, 2014). These papers also demonstrate that insulin-expressing cells in the

gut restore normal glucose levels in diabetic mice, suggesting that converted EECs may be used as a diabetes therapy in the future.

Using HIOs to study development of intestinal cell types

The columnar epithelium in HIOs contain all the main cell types of the human fetal small intestine including enterocytes, goblet cells, Paneth cells, enteroendocrine cells, and a proliferating progenitor zone (Spence *et al*, 2011b). HIO enterocytes are polarized, have a brush boarder, and have dipeptide transport activity resulting in absorption of dipeptides that are injected into the organoid lumen. Goblet cells actively secrete mucins into the lumen of the organoid, and EECs are capable of basal secretion of hormones (unpublished observation). HIOs contain proliferating progenitor cells that express *SOX9, KLF5, ASCL2,* and *LGR5*, which are localized at the base of villus-like structures. Moreover, the differentiated cell types in HIOs are present in similar proportions as their *in vivo* counterparts (Spence *et al*, 2011b). The fact that HIOs are functionally and architecturally similar to human fetal intestine, in combination with their ability to be passaged long term (Spence *et al*, 2011b; Talchai *et al*, 2012), makes them an excellent model to study human intestinal development, as well as neonatal physiology and disease. One example is seen in Spence *et al*, where the authors modeled loss of EECs that is caused by mutations in *NEUROG3* (Wang *et al*, 2006a; Pinney *et al*, 2011; Rubio-Cabezas *et al*, 2011). Knocking down of *NEUROG3* in HIOs similarly resulted in loss of EECs; moreover, ectopic expression of *NEUROG3* caused precocious differentiation of EECs. Because rodents lack some of the hormone subtypes, such as motilin that are found in humans, HIOs are an ideal model to study specification of endocrine cell lineages. Two recent examples used genetic manipulation of HIOs to convert human EECs into insulin-expressing cells (Talchai *et al*, 2012; Chen *et al*, 2014). Additionally, using CRISPR/Cas9 system, McGrath *et al*, have mutated the *NEUROG3* locus in PSCs, a tool that could provide means to model or correct human mutations causing rare intestinal diseases. Moreover, induced pluripotent stem cell lines from patients with genetic forms of intestinal diseases such as cystic fibrosis and intractable diarrhea in infancy (enteric anendocrinosis) could be used to generate HIOs to model the diseased phenotype, providing a means to understand the biology behind EECs and nutrient absorption as well as how to go about treating these patients.

Much is known about adult ISC maintenance and their ability to differentiate into all of the cell types of the adult intestinal epithelium. For example, Wnt/β-catenin signaling components are essential for maintenance of the ISCs in the crypt, whereas BMP signaling is involved in differentiation of progenitors. Wnt signaling has also been implicated in the formation of ISCs from a very early intestinal progenitor population (Fordham *et al*, 2013; Mustata *et al*, 2013); however, establishment of the niche and the exact mechanisms of action have yet to be elucidated. As the first *in vitro* model of human intestinal development, HIOs are a potentially valuable tool to identify mechanisms by which fetal intestinal progenitors give rise to differentiated cells types as well as intestinal stem cells. Manipulation of signaling pathways with small molecules, genetic manipulation of stem cell factors, and real-time imaging using cell-specific reporter lines makes HIOs a powerful new tool to study ISC development.

Maturation of PSC-derived HIOs *in vivo*

Immaturity is a common feature of human PSC-derived cells and tissues and has been reported for liver hepatocytes, pancreatic beta cells, and cardiomyocytes (Mummery *et al*, 2002; Shirahashi *et al*, 2004; D'Amour *et al*, 2006). Despite the remarkable architectural and cellular similarities to fetal intestine, HIOs do not have molecular and structural features of the adult intestine. For example, the villus-like structures that form are short and fetal-like, there are no crypts and there is no evidence for the presence of functional ISCs. Possible reasons for an immature phenotype could be that 4-week-old HIOs have not had time to mature. HIOs can be cut into smaller pieces and passaged *in vitro* for up to a year, and older HIOs acquire a somewhat more mature phenotype (Spence *et al*, 2011b; Talchai *et al*, 2012). Another cause of immaturity could be missing cell types such as vascular cells or systemic factors that could only be found *in vivo*. *In vitro*, the maximal size of an HIO is about 2 mm, which is likely due to limitations of oxygen and nutrient diffusion.

To overcome the absence of a functional vasculature system *in vitro*, a recent study described the growth of HIOs following engraftment under the kidney capsule in mice (Watson *et al*, 2014). Engrafted HIOs became vascularized by the host endothelial cells and after 6 weeks grew into intestinal tissue ranging from 1 to 2 cm in size. The resulting tissue had mature villi with a full complement of highly differentiated adult cell types and maintained regional intestinal identity in the host environment (Watson *et al*, 2014). HIOs matured *in vivo* also had *bona fide* crypts that contained Paneth cells and cells expressing ISC markers LGR5 and ASCL2. Moreover, isolated crypts had ISC activity in that they gave rise to expandable enteroids in ISC growth conditions (Sato *et al*, 2009). Lastly, HIOs grown under the kidney capsule were able to proliferate in response to small bowel resection (SBR), resulting in expansion of crypts and lengthening of villi, establishing this as a model to identify humoral factors regulating intestinal adaptation following SBR. These data suggest that HIOs engrafted *in vivo* can be used to study intestinal development and maturation, for example, the processes involved in specification of ISCs and the niche (Fig 2).

Tissue complexity of the intestine

In addition to the diversity of epithelial cell types that formed in HIOs *in vivo*, the HIO mesenchyme differentiated into three stratified layers of smooth muscle, a smooth muscle adjacent to the mucosa, and two additional layers of smooth muscle, as well as myofibroblasts and stromal fibroblasts (Watson *et al*, 2014). Moreover, HIOs grown *in vivo* develop a vascular system that is largely derived from the host. However, there are other cell and tissue types missing from HIOs that are normally found in the intestine, including mesenteric lymph nodes called Peyer's patches, an enteric nervous system, epithelial M cells, and Brunner's glands. In addition, HIOs lack microbes that are normally found in the intestine (microbiome), which play essential roles in digestion and metabolism. Therefore, for fully functional intestinal tissues to be derived from PSCs, it may be necessary to incorporate these missing components (Fig 3). Below we will discuss the embryonic development of some of these cell types and how HIOs could be engineered to contain additional complexity.

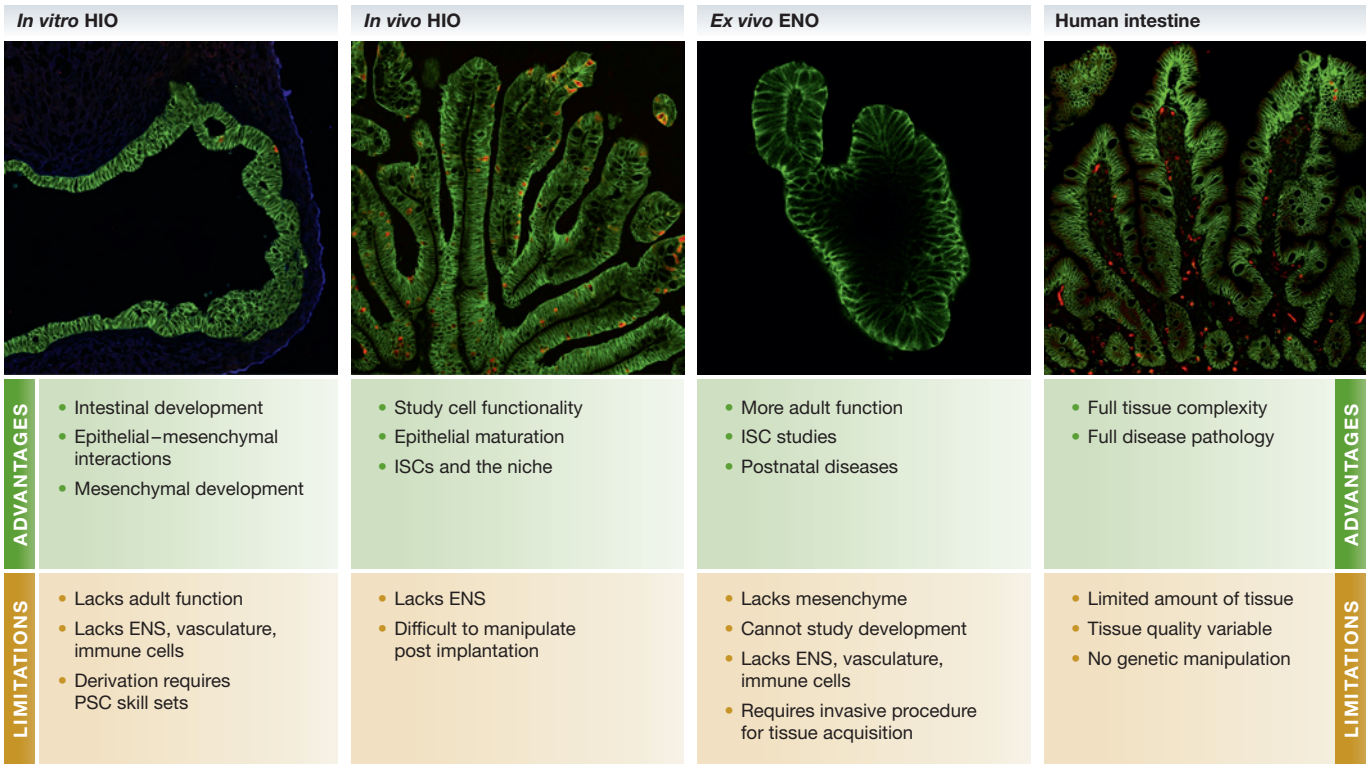


Figure 2. Unique advantages and limitations of current intestinal organoid systems.
HIOs grown *in vitro* are similar to fetal intestine and thus are uniquely suited to study human intestinal development using both genetic and pharmacologic manipulation of genes and signaling pathways. HIOs also contain mesenchyme allowing for studies of epithelial–mesenchymal interactions. HIOs grown *in vivo* contain intestinal stem cells, crypts, villi, and differentiated smooth muscle layers and can be used for functional studies of human intestine. Primary cultures of human intestinal crypts (called enteroids (ENOs) or adult intestinal organoids) have more mature characteristics and can be used to study intestinal stem cell biology. Lastly, direct analysis of patient tissues provides an important snap shot of normal and pathological states of patient tissue; there is no opportunity for experimental manipulation. Both *in vitro* systems share many advantages in studying intestinal biology and disease modeling.

The main role of the enteric nervous system (ENS) of the intestine is to coordinate peristalsis for unidirectional movement of luminal contents. There are more than 100 million neurons in the human ENS (for review, see Goldstein *et al*, 2013), which includes motor, sensory, and interneurons. Developmentally, the enteric nervous system arises from a multi-potent population of cells called neural crest cells (NCCs) that migrate into the mesenchyme of the foregut (Lake & Heuckeroth, 2013). From here, they migrate rostrocaudally and proliferate to fully colonize the gut by e14.5 in the mouse and week seven of human gestation. Migration and proliferation is driven in part by signals from the mesenchyme, including GDNF, Netrin, and BMP signaling that act via receptors on NCCs (Cacalano *et al*, 1998; Wu *et al*, 1999; Manié *et al*, 2001; Zhu *et al*, 2004). Enteric NCCs (ENCCs) will give rise to up to 18 different subtypes of neurons and glia that will form the outer myenteric plexus and the inner submucosal plexus. These plexuses are embedded within submucosal smooth muscle layer and the circular and longitudinal layers and coordinate with the interstitial cells of Cajal (ICCs) that serve as a pacemaker for peristalsis (for review on ICCs see Huizinga & Chen, 2014). In addition, the ENS and the gut epithelium are in constant communication to maintain gut barrier function, control endocrine secretions, and regulate blood flow. For example, gut hormones such as 5'HT directly stimulate ENS neurons to stimulate peristaltic movements, secretion, and vasodilation of the gut (reviewed in Mawe & Hoffman, 2013). Secretin and CCK have been shown to stimulate sensory neurons, which then act on the pancreas to release HCO^- into the duodenum as well (Nathan & Liddle, 2002; Li, 2007). Ghrelin also acts through a neuronal pathway, in order to stimulate the hunger response in basal conditions (Andrews, 2011) via a brain–gut axis.

The ENS also regulates the barrier function of the epithelium. The intestinal epithelial barrier (IEB) is composed of apically located tight junctions, as well as adherent junctions that confer mechanical strength, regulate permeability, and anchor the epithelium. Through regulation of protein subunits of epithelial junctions, the ENS controls intestinal paracellular and transcellular permeability changes that occur during postnatal development and injury (reviewed in Neunlist *et al*, 2013). Neuromediators such as acetylcholine and substance P increase permeability and cell proliferation, whereas VIP decreases it (Goode *et al*, 2003; Toumi *et al*, 2003; Cheng *et al*, 2008). In addition, glial cells secret S-nitrosoglutathione (GSNO) in response to bacterial infection, resulting in down-regulation of CDC42 and a decrease in cytoskeletal recruitment (Flamant *et al*, 2011). This increases the barrier resistance to bacteria such as *Shigella flexneri*. Lastly, in cases of intestinal injury, enteric glial cells secrete proEGF, which acts on enterocytes to increase

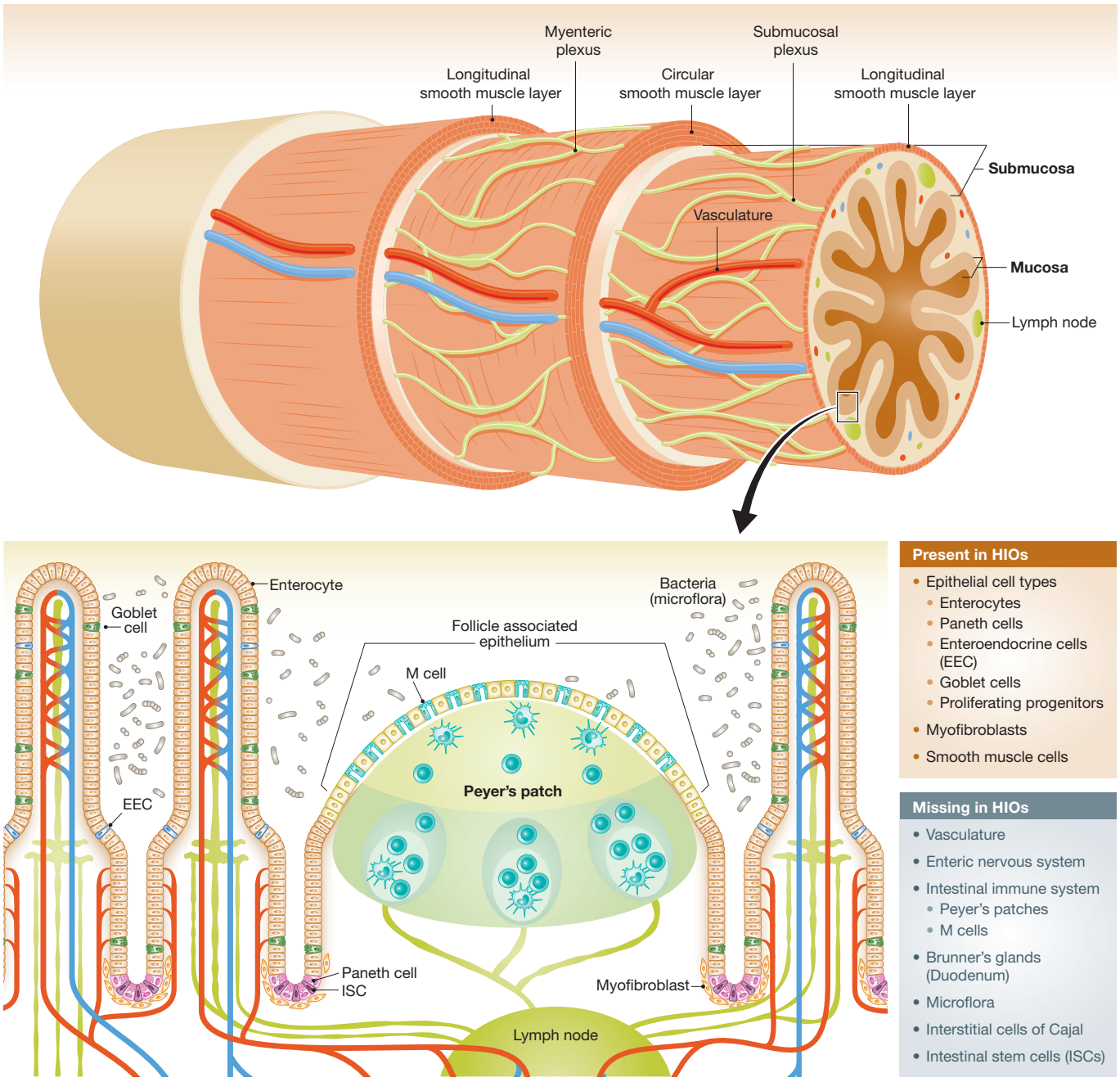


Figure 3. Complexity of the intestine.
The intestine is an assembly of multiple cell types from all 3 germ layers. The endoderm gives rise to the epithelium of the intestine (insert). This region is known as the mucosa. This includes cell subtypes such as enterocytes (yellow), enteroendocrine cells (blue), Paneth cells (pink), and goblet cells (green). Capillaries and blood vasculature as well as myofibroblasts and Peyer's patches/M cells control transport of nutrients, epithelial integrity, and immune responses, respectively. The epithelium is circled by three smooth muscle layers that are arranged in alternating longitudinal–circular–longitudinal orientations. Embedded within the muscle is the enteric neural system (ENS), the submucosal plexus and the myenteric plexus. While HIOs contain most of these epithelial and mesodermal cell types, other cell types such as neurons will need to be incorporated in order to more accurately mimic *in vivo* development and adult function. In addition, microbial components can be injected into HIOs to study immunity, gut barrier functions, and metabolism by the microbiome.

focal adhesion kinase (FAK) (Van Landeghem *et al*, 2011). FAK has major roles in intestinal cell motility, which allows cell spreading over the damaged area and increased mucosal healing.

A close association of the vasculature with the gut epithelium is essential for proper absorption and systemic transport of nutrients and hormones. The intestinal vasculature consists of 2 large mesenteric arteries that branch into arterioles, which span from the muscularis layer down to single villi. In addition, a separate arteriole branch exits the villi and submucosal layer in the opposite direction, to transport absorbed nutrient and intestinal hormones throughout

the body (reviewed in Nankervis *et al*, 2008). The temporospatial development of the vascular and enteric nervous systems suggests that their formation may be coordinated. Imaging studies of the ENS and vasculature during murine development (Hatch & Mukouyama, 2014) indicate that formation of the primary capillary plexus occurs in a similar window of time of initial neural crest colonization of the anterior gut tube, at e9.5. As the gut lengthens and grows, the capillary plexus is remodeled and gives rise to vessels that penetrate through the developing muscle layers to establish association with the epithelium, giving rise to stereotypical branching patterns and distinct arteries and veins by e15.5. During these stages, neural precursors also divide, differentiate, and remodel into the two neuronal plexuses of the ENS (Hatch & Mukouyama, 2014). The similarity between where and when the vascular and neural plexuses develop suggest they may rely on signals from each other in order to properly invade the gut. We will discuss below how endothelial and ENS progenitors might be incorporated into HIOs to study the development of these tissue types.

Additional important structures in the intestine include Brunner's glands, gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT), and Peyer's patches (PP). Brunner's glands are located in the submucosa of the proximal duodenum and are primarily composed of mucus-producing cells, which secrete type III mucin glycoproteins (Krause, 2000). They also secrete limited amounts of EGF, trefoil factors, surface-active lipids, and bactericidal factors that provide additional support and protection to the duodenum. Specialized gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT) is made up of mesenteric lymph nodes (mLN) as well as specialized lymphoid patches, called Peyer's patches (PP), which in combination function to sense antigens within the intestinal lumen and mediate immune responses. PPs are located in the lamina propria of the ileum and are comprised of follicle areas containing B and T lymphocytes as well as dendritic cells, macrophages, and antigen-sensing M cells (reviewed in Eberl & Lochner, 2009; Gibbons & Spencer, 2011). After birth, colonization of the gut by microbes is believed to further mature M cells and PPs (Bauer *et al*, 2006). However, how the immune system of the gut distinguishes between the elimination of potential pathogens and maintenance of normal gut flora remains a vastly open area of research. It is not known whether HIOs *in vitro* contain any of these structures but growth of HIOs *in vivo*, with the introduction of the hosts vasculature and immune cells, may allow for formation of GALT and Peyer's patches.

The intestinal microflora

Intestinal function depends on an extensive array of commensal and symbiotic bacteria that mediate a number of positive symbiotic host–bacterial interactions. At birth, the intestine is sterile but over time becomes populated with over 1,000 different species of microbes (Lozupone *et al*, 2012) that have very important roles in digestion, stimulating the immune system, acting in various metabolic processes, and providing a barrier against disease-causing pathogens. It is estimated that the number of bacteria in the gut outnumbers the cells of our body by 10:1 (Sekirov *et al*, 2010). The types of microbes that colonize the gut in postnatal stages of development are highly variable (reviewed in Putignani *et al*, 2010) and are influenced by antibiotic exposure during pregnancy, bacteria in the amniotic fluid, hygiene, weight gain during pregnancy, and route of birth (vaginal versus cesarean). Dysbiosis of bacterial/epithelial interactions can correlate with the development of intestinal disorders such as irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) (Li *et al*, 2014a; Wang, 2014), and obesity and diabetes (Turnbaugh *et al*, 2006; De La Serre *et al*, 2010; Han & Lin, 2014). Introduction of bacteria into the lumen of HIOs would allow for methodical screening for how patient microbiomes can impact the host epithelial maturation and function.

Engineering additional functionality into human intestinal organoids

HIOs are a highly complex organoid system containing over 10 different cell types. However, many of the cell types described above are lacking, and the generation of fully functional intestinal tissue from PSCs will ultimately require incorporation of these cells. For example, though HIOs contain mesenchymal cell types including smooth muscle, fibroblasts, and myofibroblasts, they do not have HIO-derived vascular endothelial cells and it is not clear whether they contain interstitial cells of Cajal. Moreover, sub-mucosal populations of epithelium such as Brunner's glands have not been identified in HIOs, and it is not clear whether the epithelium is competent to generate these specific cell populations. One of the most critical components lacking in HIOs is the enteric nervous system/ENS, and we will use this as an example of how one might engineer additional complexity into HIOs. The ENS is an ectodermal cell type deriving from neural crest cells/NCCs. Given that NCCs are not present in HIO cultures, the only way to generate HIOs with an ENS would be to mechanically incorporate NCCs into HIOs at some stage during their differentiation. First, one would have to generate NCCs *in vitro* and there are established protocols for the generation of cranial NCCs from PSCs (Chambers *et al*, 2009; Menendez *et al*, 2011, 2013; Kreitzer *et al*, 2013). However, vagal/sacral NCCs, which are the source of the ENS, have not yet been generated *in vitro*. Therefore, cranial NCCs would have to be posteriorized to adopt a more vagal/sacral NCC fate and then incorporated into the developing HIOs. As with all PSC differentiation protocols, the best approach has always been to follow normal developmental timing. Given that NCCs migrate into the gut tube mesenchyme shortly after gut tube formation, incorporating NCCs shortly after gut tube/spheroid formation would be the most biologically logical choice. If NCCs could be incorporated into HIOs, it would allow for *in vitro* analysis of ENS migration, proliferation, and differentiation of different neural cell types and assembly into the two neural plexuses. Little is known about how NCCs interact with the mesenchymal and endodermal cells during intestinal development and how the mature ENS modulates epithelial and immune function. Importantly, building additional functionality into HIOs would allow for studies of complex diseases like Hirschsprung's disease, irritable bowel syndrome, cancer, and infection via bacterial pathogens, as discusses below.

Current and future uses of HIOs for intestinal disease research

Intestinal diseases are caused by parasitic, genetic, environmental, and sometimes a combination of these factors and affect

60–70 million people in the USA. In the following section, we address some of the major disorders of the intestine and how organoids are being used to uncover new disease mechanisms (Fig 4).

Infectious diseases

There are two examples where HIOs have been previously used to study enteric pathogens. In one example, the microorganism *C. difficile* was injected into HIOs and resulted in epithelial barrier dysfunction, similar to *in vivo* infections (Leslie *et al*, 2014). A second study involved rotovirus, for which current cell culture models were inadequate because they did not support viral replication. In contrast, HIOs supported the rotovirus life cycle and now represent a relevant model system to study the pathology of this gastrointestinal viral infection (Finkbeiner *et al*, 2012). Moreover, the use of PSC reporter lines that mark specific subpopulations of cells, such as a recently reported LGR5-GFP line (McCracken *et al*, 2014; Watson *et al*, 2014), would allow for identification of which cell types are targeted by these various pathogenic agents. There are, however, many enteric pathogens for which no good human model exists. *Gardia duodenalis* (*G. duodenalis*) is a protozoan parasite that inhabits the upper small intestine and causes the disease human giardiasis. The parasite spreads via a fecal–oral route, most often from contaminated food or water. During infection, the parasite induces apoptosis in villus epithelial cells,

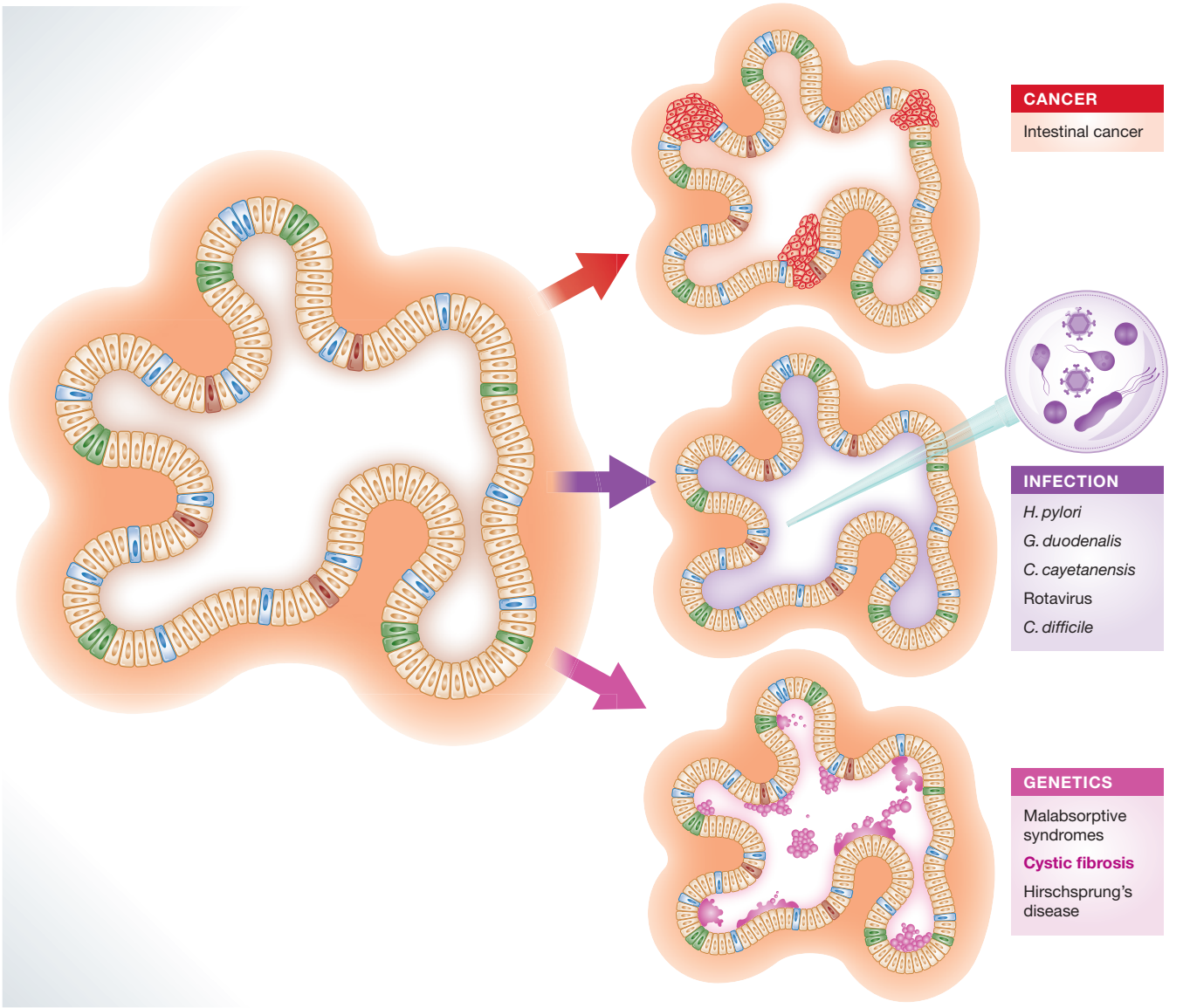


Figure 4. Using HIOs to study intestinal development and model diseases.
The *in vitro* culture of human intestinal tissues provides new opportunities to study cancer, infection, and genetic diseases. This is essential since certain human diseases, such as colon cancer, and enteric pathogens, such as *C. cayetanensis*, are not effectively studied in other model systems. This makes studying human intestinal disease very difficult. In addition, HIOs could be used as a rapid primary screen for drug absorption and GI toxicity, the most common off-target effect of new drugs.

hyperplasia of crypts, as well as intestinal barrier dysfunction (reviewed in Halliez & Buret, 2013). So little is known about the pathophysiology of this parasite that it has been recently put on the World Health Organization's Neglected Disease Initiative (World Health Organization, 2004; Savioli *et al*, 2006). *Cyclospora cayetanensis* (*C. cayetanensis*) is another food- or water-borne parasite for which the only known host is the human small intestinal epithelium. Considered an emerging pathogen, *C. cayetanensis* infection and outbreaks are quite difficult to diagnose (Eberhard *et al*, 1997; Mansfield & Gajadhar, 2004). For pathogens such as these, human intestinal organoid systems are the only known option for understanding the biology of infection.

Genetic diseases

There are several common genetic diseases that affect intestinal epithelial function. For example, autosomal recessive mutations in the cystic fibrosis trans-membrane regulator (*CFTR*) gene lead to decreased Cl^- ion movement through epithelial cells (Riordan *et al*, 1989), hyperabsorption of fluids, and subsequent dehydration of epithelial cells. While cystic fibrosis (CF) has pathology in many epithelial tissues, in the intestine it affects the motility of luminal contents, causes bacterial overgrowth, increases inflammation and ulceration, as well as leads to the accumulation of mucus. Aberrant secretion and altered mucus content often leads to intestinal blockage and malabsorptive phenotypes. Current small molecule therapies for CF are only modestly effective, and human intestinal organoids represent a new system for high-throughput, functional screens for new therapeutic compounds. For example, intestinal organoids derived from surgical biopsies of CF patients had a measurable disease phenotype that was corrected with an existing CF drug (Dekkers *et al*, 2013). Several groups have derived iPSC lines from CF patients (Mou *et al*, 2012), and HIOs from iPSC lines with specific CF mutations could uncover developmental reasons for why different CF mutations associate with more severe intestinal disease.

Hirschsprung's disease (HSCR) is characterized by absence or paucity of neurons in the intestine and occurs in about 1:5,000 live births (McKeown *et al*, 2013). Depending on the severely, this can cause severe megacolon, chronic constipation, and a distended abdomen, requiring surgical resection of the aganglionic region. Several mutations have been shown to affect NCC migration, proliferation, and innervation including GDNF-GFRA1-Ret signaling (reviewed in McKeown *et al*, 2013), *Endothelin 3*, and *Sox10* (Kapur, 1999; Southard-Smith *et al*, 1998; Cantrell *et al*, 2004). Single allele mutation of *RET* in humans can cause the disease; however, this is not the case in mouse (Schuchardt *et al*, 1994; Gianino *et al*, 2003). An HIO-based approach might be an effective way to study the molecular basis of HSCR, but would require the incorporation of the neural crest-derived ENS progenitor cells. In support of this concept, adult neural progenitors from human or mouse healthy intestinal tissue have been incorporated into aganglionic fetal intestinal explants in culture and *in vivo* mouse models of HSCR (Natarajan *et al*, 1999; Bondurand *et al*, 2003; Dupin & Sommer, 2012). When incorporated, these neural progenitors differentiated and reduced the severity of the HSCR phenotype, yet formation of a complete neural plexus was not observed. A similar approach could be used with patient-specific NCC-derived neural progenitors and HIOs.

There are several additional multifactorial diseases that affect the intestine and colon. Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), which is chronic inflammatory condition, can affect the small intestine, as with ulcerative colitis (UC), or large intestines, as with Crohn's disease (CD). Immunosuppression is the primary therapy, yet it is not known what triggers the abnormal immune response. Studies suggest that alterations in the microbiome may play a role in IBD (Li *et al*, 2014a; Wang, 2014). The ease of manipulating HIOs makes them amenable for IBD studies. For example, it has been shown that organoids can be injected with bacteria and this can be used to study early disease inductive events (McCracken *et al*, 2014). Moreover, it should be possible to study inflammatory responses by incorporating macrophages from healthy and IBD patients into HIO cultures. It may also be possible to repair damage caused by IBD using human colonic stem cells. In mice, it has been shown that engraftment of $Lgr5^+$-derived colonic epithelium improves acute colitis and resulted in repopulation of damaged colonic tissue (Yui *et al*, 2012). Organoids derived from adult mouse intestine have been used recently to model colon cancer (Li *et al*, 2014b). While it is not clear whether HIOs, which are fetal in nature, could be used to model intestinal cancers, HIO tissues that are matured *in vivo* have adult characteristics and could be used to induce oncogenic mutations as was done in mouse (Li *et al*, 2014b).

Concluding remarks

The intestine is a remarkable organ that incorporates cell and tissue types from all three embryonic germ layers to carry out its absorptive, secretory, endocrine, barrier, and mechanical functions. Disruption of any of these myriad of intestinal functions can result in disease, underlying the need for human model systems to study various pathologies. The complexity of this organ has made it difficult to derive intestine from PSCs using traditional 2-D approaches, thus necessitating the development of 3-D, organoid-based systems. While the current HIO system has provided new opportunities for developmental and disease research, tissue engineering additional complexity into HIOs will allow for increased functionality and expanded utility.

Acknowledgements

We thank Dr. Chris Mayhew and members of the Wells Lab for input and scientific discussion. JMW and KLS are supported by NIH grants, U01DK103117, U18TR000546, R01DK098350, R01DK080823, and R01DK092456.

Conflict of interest

The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

References

Andrews ZB (2011) Central mechanisms involved in the orexigenic actions of ghrelin. *Peptides* 32: 2248 – 2255

Antonica F, Kasprzyk DF, Opitz R, Iacovino M, Liao X-H, Dumitrescu AM, Refetoff S, Peremans K, Manto M, Kyba M, Costagliola S (2012) Generation of functional thyroid from embryonic stem cells. *Nature* 491: 66 – 71

Bastide P, Darido C, Pannequin J, Kist R, Robine S, Marty-Double C, Bibeau F, Scherer G, Joubert D, Hollande F, Blache P, Jay P (2007) Sox9 regulates cell proliferation and is required for Paneth cell differentiation in the intestinal epithelium. *J Cell Biol* 178: 635 – 648

Bauer E, Williams BA, Smidt H, Verstegen MWA, Mosenthin R (2006) Influence of the gastrointestinal microbiota on development of the immune system in young animals. *Curr Issues Intest Microbiol* 7: 35 – 51

Bayha E, Jørgensen MC, Serup P, Grapin-Botton A (2009) Retinoic acid signaling organizes endodermal organ specification along the entire antero-posterior axis. *PLoS ONE* 4: e5845

Bel-Vialar S, Itasaki N, Krumlauf R (2002) Initiating Hox gene expression: in the early chick neural tube differential sensitivity to FGF and RA signaling subdivides the HoxB genes in two distinct groups. *Development* 129: 5103 – 5115

Beucher A, Gjernes E, Collin C, Courtney M, Meunier A, Collombat P, Gradwohl G (2012) The homeodomain-containing transcription factors Arx and Pax4 control enteroendocrine subtype specification in mice. *PLoS ONE* 7: e36449

Bondurand N, Natarajan D, Thapar N, Atkins C, Pachnis V (2003) Neuron and glia generating progenitors of the mammalian enteric nervous system isolated from foetal and postnatal gut cultures. *Development* 130: 6387 – 6400

Burns RC, Fairbanks TJ, Sala F, De Langhe S, Mailleux A, Thiery JP, Dickson C, Itoh N, Warburton D, Anderson KD, Bellusci S (2004) Requirement for fibroblast growth factor 10 or fibroblast growth factor receptor 2-IIIb signaling for cecal development in mouse. *Dev Biol* 265: 61 – 74

Cacalano G, Fariñas I, Wang LC, Hagler K, Forgie A, Moore M, Armanini M, Phillips H, Ryan AM, Reichardt LF, Hynes M, Davies A, Rosenthal A (1998) GFRalpha1 is an essential receptor component for GDNF in the developing nervous system and kidney. *Neuron* 21: 53 – 62

Cai J, Zhao Y, Liu Y, Ye F, Song Z, Qin H, Meng S, Chen Y, Zhou R, Song X, Guo Y, Ding M, Deng H (2007) Directed differentiation of human embryonic stem cells into functional hepatic cells. *Hepatology* 45: 1229 – 1239

Cantrell VA, Owens SE, Chandler RL, Airey DC, Bradley KM, Smith JR, Southard-Smith EM (2004) Interactions between Sox10 and EdnrB modulate penetrance and severity of aganglionosis in the Sox10Dom mouse model of Hirschsprung disease. *Hum Mol Genet* 13: 2289 – 2301

Cao L, Gibson JD, Miyamoto S, Sail V, Verma R, Rosenberg DW, Nelson CE, Giardina C (2011) Intestinal lineage commitment of embryonic stem cells. *Differentiation* 81: 1 – 10

Cervantes S, Yamaguchi TP, Hebrok M (2009) Wnt5a is essential for intestinal elongation in mice. *Dev Biol* 326: 285 – 294

Chambers SM, Fasano CA, Papapetrou EP, Tomishima M, Sadelain M, Studer L (2009) Highly efficient neural conversion of human ES and iPS cells by dual inhibition of SMAD signaling. *Nat Biotechnol* 27: 275 – 280

Chen AE, Borowiak M, Sherwood RI, Kweudjeu A, Melton DA (2013) Functional evaluation of ES cell-derived endodermal populations reveals differences between Nodal and Activin A-guided differentiation. *Development* 140: 675 – 686

Chen C, Fang R, Davis C, Maravelias C, Sibley E (2009) Pdx1 inactivation restricted to the intestinal epithelium in mice alters duodenal gene expression in enterocytes and enteroendocrine cells. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 297: G1126 – G1137

Chen Y-J, Finkbeiner SR, Weinblatt D, Emmett MJ, Tameire F, Yousefi M, Yang C, Maehr R, Zhou Q, Shemer R, Dor Y, Li C, Spence JR, Stanger BZ (2014) De novo formation of insulin-producing "neo-β cell islets" from intestinal crypts. *Cell Rep* 6: 1046 – 1058

Cheng H, Leblond CP (1974) Origin, differentiation and renewal of the four main epithelial cell types in the mouse small intestine I. Columnar cell. *Am J Anat* 141: 461 – 479

Cheng K, Samimi R, Xie G, Shant J, Drachenberg C, Wade M, Davis RJ, Nomikos G, Raufman J-P (2008) Acetylcholine release by human colon cancer cells mediates autocrine stimulation of cell proliferation. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 295: G591 – G597

Crespo MA, González ML, Lozano MG, Paz SF, Pérez MR, Gago EV, Ferrer FM (2009) Gastrointestinal hormones in food intake control. *Endocrinol Nutr* 56: 317 – 330

D'Amour KA, Agulnick AD, Eliazer S, Kelly OG, Kroon E, Baetge EE (2005) Efficient differentiation of human embryonic stem cells to definitive endoderm. *Nat Biotechnol* 23: 1534 – 1541

D'Amour KA, Bang AG, Eliazer S, Kelly OG, Agulnick AD, Smart NG, Moorman MA, Kroon E, Carpenter MK, Baetge EE (2006) Production of pancreatic hormone-expressing endocrine cells from human embryonic stem cells. *Nat Biotechnol* 24: 1392 – 1401

De La Serre CB, Ellis CL, Lee J, Hartman AL, Rutledge JC, Raybould HE (2010) Propensity to high-fat diet-induced obesity in rats is associated with changes in the gut microbiota and gut inflammation. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 299: G440 – G448

Deacon CF, Ahrén B (2011) Physiology of incretins in health and disease. *Rev Diabet Stud* 8: 293 – 306

Dekkers JF, Wiegerinck CL, de Jonge HR, Bronsveld I, Janssens HM, de Winter-de Groot KM, Brandsma AM, de Jong NWM, Bijvelds MJC, Scholte BJ, Nieuwenhuis EES, van den Brink S, Clevers H, van der Ent CK, Middendorp S, Beekman JM (2013) A functional CFTR assay using primary cystic fibrosis intestinal organoids. *Nat Med* 19: 939 – 945

Desai S, Loomis Z, Pugh-Bernard A, Schrunk J, Doyle MJ, Minic A, McCoy E, Sussel L (2008) Nkx2.2 regulates cell fate choice in the enteroendocrine cell lineages of the intestine. *Dev Biol* 313: 58 – 66

Dessimoz J, Opoka R, Kordich JJ, Grapin-Botton A, Wells JM (2006) FGF signaling is necessary for establishing gut tube domains along the anterior-posterior axis in vivo. *Mech Dev* 123: 42 – 55

Dupin E, Sommer L (2012) Neural crest progenitors and stem cells: from early development to adulthood. *Dev Biol* 366: 83 – 95

Eberhard ML, Pieniazek NJ, Arrowood MJ (1997) Laboratory diagnosis of Cyclospora infections. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 121: 792 – 797

Eberl G, Lochner M (2009) The development of intestinal lymphoid tissues at the interface of self and microbiota. *Mucosal Immunol* 2: 478 – 485

Ehrman LA, Yutzey KE (2001) Anterior expression of the caudal homologue cCdx-B activates a posterior genetic program in avian embryos. *Dev Dyn* 221: 412 – 421

Finkbeiner SR, Zeng X-L, Utama B, Atmar RL, Shroyer NF, Estes MK (2012) Stem cell-derived human intestinal organoids as an infection model for rotaviruses. *MBio* 3: e00159-12

Flamant M, Aubert P, Rolli-Derkinderen M, Bourreille A, Neunlist MR, Mahé MM, Meurette G, Marteyn B, Savidge T, Galmiche JP, Sansonetti PJ, Neunlist M (2011) Enteric glia protect against Shigella flexneri invasion in intestinal epithelial cells: a role for S-nitrosoglutathione. *Gut* 60: 473 – 484

Fordham RP, Yui S, Hannan NRF, Soendergaard C, Madgwick A, Schweiger PJ, Nielsen OH, Vallier L, Pedersen RA, Nakamura T, Watanabe M, Jensen KB (2013) Transplantation of expanded fetal intestinal progenitors contributes to colon regeneration after injury. *Cell Stem Cell* 13: 734 – 744

Fre S, Huyghe M, Mourikis P, Robine S, Louvard D, Artavanis-Tsakonas S (2005) Notch signals control the fate of immature progenitor cells in the intestine. *Nature* 435: 964 – 968

Gerbe F, Legraverend C, Jay P (2012) The intestinal epithelium tuft cells: specification and function. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 69: 2907 – 2917

Gianino S, Grider JR, Cresswell J, Enomoto H, Heuckeroth RO (2003) GDNF availability determines enteric neuron number by controlling precursor proliferation. *Development* 130: 2187 – 2198

Gibbons DL, Spencer J (2011) Mouse and human intestinal immunity: same ballpark, different players; different rules, same score. *Mucosal Immunol* 4: 148 – 157

Goldstein AM, Hofstra RMW, Burns AJ (2013) Building a brain in the gut: development of the enteric nervous system. *Clin Genet* 83: 307 – 316

Goode T, O'Connor T, Hopkins A, Moriarty D, O'Sullivan GC, Collins JK, O'Donoghue D, Baird AW, O'Connell J, Shanahan F (2003) Neurokinin-1 receptor (NK-1R) expression is induced in human colonic epithelial cells by proinflammatory cytokines and mediates proliferation in response to substance P. *J Cell Physiol* 197: 30 – 41

Grainger S, Savory JGA, Lohnes D (2010) Cdx2 regulates patterning of the intestinal epithelium. *Dev Biol* 339: 155 – 165

Gregorieff A, Grosschedl R, Clevers H (2004) Hindgut defects and transformation of the gastro-intestinal tract in Tcf4(-/-)/Tcf1(-/-) embryos. *EMBO J* 23: 1825 – 1833

Grosse AS, Pressprich MF, Curley LB, Hamilton KL, Margolis B, Hildebrand JD, Gumucio DL (2011) Cell dynamics in fetal intestinal epithelium: implications for intestinal growth and morphogenesis. *Development* 138: 4423 – 4432

Halliez MCM, Buret AG (2013) Extra-intestinal and long term consequences of Giardia duodenalis infections. *World J Gastroenterol* 19: 8974 – 8985

Han J-L, Lin H-L (2014) Intestinal microbiota and type 2 diabetes: from mechanism insights to therapeutic perspective. *World J Gastroenterol* 20: 17737 – 17745

Hatch J, Mukouyama Y-S (2014) Spatiotemporal mapping of vascularization and innervation in the fetal murine intestine. *Dev Dyn* 244: 56 – 68

Ho CY, Houart C, Wilson SW, Stainier DY (1999) A role for the extraembryonic yolk syncytial layer in patterning the zebrafish embryo suggested by properties of the hex gene. *Curr Biol* 9: 1131 – 1134

Hounnou G, Destrieux C, Desmé J, Bertrand P, Velut S (2002) Anatomical study of the length of the human intestine. *Surg Radiol Anat* 24: 290 – 294

Huang D, Chen SW, Langston AW, Gudas LJ (1998) A conserved retinoic acid responsive element in the murine Hoxb-1 gene is required for expression in the developing gut. *Development* 125: 3235 – 3246

Huizinga JD, Chen J-H (2014) Interstitial cells of Cajal: update on basic and clinical science. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 16: 363

Jenny M, Uhl C, Roche C, Duluc I, Guillermin V, Guillemot F, Jensen J, Kedinger M, Gradwohl G (2002) Neurogenin3 is differentially required for endocrine cell fate specification in the intestinal and gastric epithelium. *EMBO J* 21: 6338 – 6347

Jensen J, Pedersen EE, Galante P, Hald J, Heller RS, Ishibashi M, Kageyama R, Guillemot F, Serup P, Madsen OD (2000) Control of endodermal endocrine development by Hes-1. *Nat Genet* 24: 36 – 44

Kapur RP (1999) Early death of neural crest cells is responsible for total enteric aganglionosis in Sox10(Dom)/Sox10(Dom) mouse embryos. *Pediatr Dev Pathol* 2: 559 – 569

Karlsson L, Lindahl P, Heath JK, Betsholtz C (2000) Abnormal gastrointestinal development in PDGF-A and PDGFR-(alpha) deficient mice implicates a novel mesenchymal structure with putative instructive properties in villus morphogenesis. *Development* 127: 3457 – 3466

Katz JP, Perreault N, Goldstein BG, Lee CS, Labosky PA, Yang VW, Kaestner KH (2002) The zinc-finger transcription factor Klf4 is required for terminal differentiation of goblet cells in the colon. *Development* 129: 2619 – 2628

Kinkel MD, Eames SC, Alonzo MR, Prince VE (2008) Cdx4 is required in the endoderm to localize the pancreas and limit beta-cell number. *Development* 135: 919 – 929

Krause WJ (2000) Brunner's glands: a structural, histochemical and pathological profile. *Prog Histochem Cytochem* 35: 255 – 367

Kreitzer FR, Salomonis N, Sheehan A, Huang M, Park JS, Spindler MJ, Lizarraga P, Weiss WA, So P-L, Conklin BR (2013) A robust method to derive functional neural crest cells from human pluripotent stem cells. *Am J Stem Cells* 2: 119 – 131

Kubo A, Shinozaki K, Shannon JM, Kouskoff V, Kennedy M, Woo S, Fehling HJ, Keller G (2004) Development of definitive endoderm from embryonic stem cells in culture. *Development* 131: 1651 – 1662

Kumar M, Jordan N, Melton D, Grapin-Botton A (2003) Signals from lateral plate mesoderm instruct endoderm toward a pancreatic fate. *Dev Biol* 259: 109 – 122

Lake JI, Heuckeroth RO (2013) Enteric nervous system development: migration, differentiation, and disease. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 305: G1 – G24

Lancaster MA, Knoblich JA (2014) Organogenesis in a dish: modeling development and disease using organoid technologies. *Science* 345: 1247125

Larsson L-I, St-Onge L, Hougaard DM, Sosa-Pineda B, Gruss P (1998) Pax 4 and 6 regulate gastrointestinal endocrine cell development. *Mech Dev* 79: 153 – 159

Leslie JL, Huang S, Opp JS, Nagy MS, Kobayashi M, Young VB, Spence JR (2014) Persistence and toxin production by Clostridium difficile within human intestinal organoids results in disruption of epithelial paracellular barrier function. *Infect Immun* 83: 138 – 145

Li J, Butcher J, Mack D, Stintzi A (2014a) Functional Impacts of the Intestinal Microbiome in the Pathogenesis of Inflammatory Bowel Disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 29: 107 – 114

Li X, Nadauld L, Ootani A, Corney DC, Pai RK, Gevaert O, Cantrell MA, Rack PG, Neal JT, Chan CW-M, Yeung T, Gong X, Yuan J, Wilhelmy J, Robine S, Attardi LD, Plevritis SK, Hung KE, Chen C-Z, Ji HP *et al* (2014b) Oncogenic transformation of diverse gastrointestinal tissues in primary organoid culture. *Nat Med* 20: 769 – 777

Li Y (2007) Sensory signal transduction in the vagal primary afferent neurons. *Curr Med Chem* 14: 2554 – 2563

Lickert H, Kemler R (2002) Functional analysis of cis-regulatory elements controlling initiation and maintenance of early Cdx1 gene expression in the mouse. *Dev Dyn* 225: 216 – 220

Longmire TA, Ikonomou L, Hawkins F, Christodoulou C, Cao Y, Jean JC, Kwok LW, Mou H, Rajagopal J, Shen SS, Dowton AA, Serra M, Weiss DJ, Green MD, Snoeck H-W, Ramirez MI, Kotton DN (2012) Efficient derivation of purified lung and thyroid progenitors from embryonic stem cells. *Cell Stem Cell* 10: 398 – 411

López-Díaz L, Jain RN, Keeley TM, VanDussen KL, Brunkan CS, Gumucio DL, Samuelson LC (2007) Intestinal Neurogenin 3 directs differentiation of a bipotential secretory progenitor to endocrine cell rather than goblet cell fate. *Dev Biol* 309: 298 – 305

Lozupone CA, Stombaugh JI, Gordon JI, Jansson JK, Knight R (2012) Diversity, stability and resilience of the human gut microbiota. *Nature* 489: 220 – 230

Lumelsky N, Blondel O, Laeng P, Velasco I, Ravin R, McKay R (2001) Differentiation of embryonic stem cells to insulin-secreting structures similar to pancreatic islets. *Science* 292: 1389 – 1394

Manié S, Santoro M, Fusco A, Billaud M (2001) The RET receptor: function in development and dysfunction in congenital malformation. *Trends Genet* 17: 580 – 589

Mansfield LS, Gajadhar AA (2004) Cyclospora cayetanensis, a food- and waterborne coccidian parasite. *Vet Parasitol* 126: 73 – 90

Mawe GM, Hoffman JM (2013) Serotonin Signaling in the Gastrointestinal Tract: functions, dysfunctions, and therapeutic targets. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 10: 473 – 486

McCracken KW, Catá EM, Crawford CM, Sinagoga KL, Schumacher M, Rockich BE, Tsai Y-H, Mayhew CN, Spence JR, Zavros Y, Wells JM (2014) Modelling human development and disease in pluripotent stem-cell-derived gastric organoids. *Nature* 516: 400 – 404

McCracken KW, Howell JC, Wells JM, Spence JR (2011) Generating human intestinal tissue from pluripotent stem cells in vitro. *Nat Protoc* 6: 1920 – 1928

McKeown SJ, Stamp L, Hao MM, Young HM (2013) Hirschsprung disease: a developmental disorder of the enteric nervous system. *Wiley Interdiscip Rev Dev Biol* 2: 113 – 129

McLin VA, Rankin SA, Zorn AM (2007) Repression of Wnt/beta-catenin signaling in the anterior endoderm is essential for liver and pancreas development. *Development* 134: 2207 – 2217

Menendez L, Kulik MJ, Page AT, Park SS, Lauderdale JD, Cunningham ML, Dalton S (2013) Directed differentiation of human pluripotent cells to neural crest stem cells. *Nat Protoc* 8: 203 – 212

Menendez L, Yatskievych TA, Antin PB, Dalton S (2011) Wnt signaling and a Smad pathway blockade direct the differentiation of human pluripotent stem cells to multipotent neural crest cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 108: 19240 – 19245

Mooseker MS (1985) Organization, chemistry, and assembly of the cytoskeletal apparatus of the intestinal brush border. *Annu Rev Cell Biol* 1: 209 – 241

Mori-Akiyama Y, van den Born M, van Es JH, Hamilton SR, Adams HP, Zhang J, Clevers H, de Crombrugghe B (2007) SOX9 is required for the differentiation of paneth cells in the intestinal epithelium. *Gastroenterology* 133: 539 – 546

Mou H, Zhao R, Sherwood R, Ahfeldt T, Lapey A, Wain J, Sicilian L, Izvolsky K, Musunuru K, Cowan C, Rajagopal J (2012) Generation of multipotent lung and airway progenitors from mouse ESCs and patient-specific cystic fibrosis iPSCs. *Cell Stem Cell* 10: 385 – 397

Mummery C, Ward D, van den Brink CE, Bird SD, Doevendans PA, Opthof T, Brutel de la Riviere A, Tertoolen L, van der Heyden M, Pera M (2002) Cardiomyocyte differentiation of mouse and human embryonic stem cells. *J Anat* 200: 233 – 242

Mustata RC, Vasile G, Fernandez-Vallone V, Strollo S, Lefort A, Libert F, Monteyne D, Pérez-Morga D, Vassart G, Garcia M-I (2013) Identification of Lgr5-independent spheroid-generating progenitors of the mouse fetal intestinal epithelium. *Cell Rep* 5: 421 – 432

Nankervis CA, Giannone PJ, Reber KM (2008) The neonatal intestinal vasculature: contributing factors to necrotizing enterocolitis. *Semin Perinatol* 32: 83 – 91

Natarajan D, Grigoriou M, Marcos-Gutierrez CV, Atkins C, Pachnis V (1999) Multipotential progenitors of the mammalian enteric nervous system capable of colonising aganglionic bowel in organ culture. *Development* 126: 157 – 168

Nathan JD, Liddle RA (2002) Neurohormonal control of pancreatic exocrine secretion. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 18: 536 – 544

Naya FJ, Huang HP, Qiu Y, Mutoh H, DeMayo FJ, Leiter AB, Tsai MJ (1997) Diabetes, defective pancreatic morphogenesis, and abnormal enteroendocrine differentiation in BETA2/neuroD-deficient mice. *Genes Dev* 11: 2323 – 2334

Neunlist M, Van Landeghem L, Mahé MM, Derkinderen P, des Varannes SB, Rolli-Derkinderen M (2013) The digestive neuronal-glial-epithelial unit: a new actor in gut health and disease. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 10: 90 – 100

Niederreither K, Vermot J, Le Roux I, Schuhbaur B, Chambon P, Dollé P (2003) The regional pattern of retinoic acid synthesis by RALDH2 is essential for the development of posterior pharyngeal arches and the enteric nervous system. *Development* 130: 2525 – 2534

Noah TK, Donahue B, Shroyer NF (2011) Intestinal development and differentiation. *Exp Cell Res* 317: 2702 – 2710

Ootani A, Li X, Sangiorgi E, Ho QT, Ueno H, Toda S, Sugihara H, Fujimoto K, Weissman IL, Capecchi MR, Kuo CJ (2009) Sustained in vitro intestinal epithelial culture within a Wnt-dependent stem cell niche. *Nat Med* 15: 701 – 706

Pellegrinet L, Rodilla V, Liu Z, Chen S, Koch U, Espinosa L, Kaestner KH, Kopan R, Lewis J, Radtke F (2011) Dll1- and dll4-mediated notch signaling are required for homeostasis of intestinal stem cells. *Gastroenterology* 140: 1230 – 1240.e7

Pinney SE, Oliver-Krasinski J, Ernst L, Hughes N, Patel P, Stoffers DA, Russo P, De León DD (2011) Neonatal diabetes and congenital malabsorptive diarrhea attributable to a novel mutation in the human neurogenin-3 gene coding sequence. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 96: 1960 – 1965

Pownall ME, Isaacs HV, Slack JM (1998) Two phases of Hox gene regulation during early Xenopus development. *Curr Biol* 8: 673 – 676

Putignani L, Carsetti R, Signore F, Manco M (2010) Additional maternal and nonmaternal factors contribute to microbiota shaping in newborns. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 107: E159; author reply E160

Rankin SA, Kormish J, Kofron M, Jegga A, Zorn AM (2011) A gene regulatory network controlling hhex transcription in the anterior endoderm of the organizer. *Dev Biol* 351: 297 – 310

Reinus JF, Simon D (2014) *Gastrointestinal Anatomy and Physiology: The Essentials*. Oxford, UK: John Wiley & Sons, Ltd

Rindi G, Ratineau C, Ronco A, Candusso ME, Tsai M, Leiter AB (1999) Targeted ablation of secretin-producing cells in transgenic mice reveals a common differentiation pathway with multiple enteroendocrine cell lineages in the small intestine. *Development* 4156: 4149 – 4156

Riordan JR, Rommens JM, Kerem B, Alon N, Rozmahel R, Grzelczak Z, Zielenski J, Lok S, Plavsic N, Chou JL (1989) Identification of the cystic fibrosis gene: cloning and characterization of complementary DNA. *Science* 245: 1066 – 1073

Roberts DJ, Johnson RL, Burke AC, Nelson CE, Morgan BA, Tabin C (1995) Sonic hedgehog is an endodermal signal inducing Bmp-4 and Hox genes during induction and regionalization of the chick hindgut. *Development* 121: 3163 – 3174

Rubio-Cabezas O, Jensen JN, Hodgson MI, Codner E, Ellard S, Serup P, Hattersley AT (2011) Permanent Neonatal Diabetes and Enteric Anendocrinosis Associated With Biallelic Mutations in NEUROG3. *Diabetes* 60: 1349 – 1353

Sala FG, Curtis JL, Veltmaat JM, Del Moral P-M, Le LT, Fairbanks TJ, Warburton D, Ford H, Wang K, Burns RC, Bellusci S (2006) Fibroblast growth factor 10 is required for survival and proliferation but not differentiation of intestinal epithelial progenitor cells during murine colon development. *Dev Biol* 299: 373 – 385

Sato T, Clevers H (2013) Growing self-organizing mini-guts from a single intestinal stem cell: mechanism and applications. *Science* 340: 1190 – 1194

Sato T, Stange DE, Ferrante M, Vries RGJ, Van Es JH, Van den Brink S, Van Houdt WJ, Pronk A, Van Gorp J, Siersema PD, Clevers H (2011) Long-term expansion

of epithelial organoids from human colon, adenoma, adenocarcinoma, and Barrett's epithelium. *Gastroenterology* 141: 1762 – 1772

Sato T, Vries RG, Snippert HJ, van de Wetering M, Barker N, Stange DE, van Es JH, Abo A, Kujala P, Peters PJ, Clevers H (2009) Single Lgr5 stem cells build crypt-villus structures in vitro without a mesenchymal niche. *Nature* 459: 262 – 265

Savioli L, Smith H, Thompson A (2006) Giardia and Cryptosporidium join the "Neglected Diseases Initiative". *Trends Parasitol* 22: 203 – 208

Schuchardt A, D'Agati V, Larsson-Blomberg L, Costantini F, Pachnis V (1994) Defects in the kidney and enteric nervous system of mice lacking the tyrosine kinase receptor Ret. *Nature* 367: 380 – 383

Sekirov I, Russell SL, Antunes LCM, Finlay BB (2010) Gut microbiota in health and disease. *Physiol Rev* 90: 859 – 904

Sherwood R (2009) Transcriptional dynamics of endodermal organ formation. *Dev Dyn* 238: 29 – 42

Shirahashi H, Wu J, Yamamoto N, Catana A, Wege H, Wager B, Okita K, Zern MA (2004) Differentiation of human and mouse embryonic stem cells along a hepatocyte lineage. *Cell Transplant* 13: 197 – 211

Shroyer NF, Helmrath MA, Wang VY-C, Antalffy B, Henning SJ, Zoghbi HY (2007) Intestine-specific ablation of mouse atonal homolog 1 (Math1) reveals a role in cellular homeostasis. *Gastroenterology* 132: 2478 – 2488

Shyer AE, Tallinen T, Nerurkar NL, Wei Z, Gil ES, Kaplan DL, Tabin CJ, Mahadevan L (2013) Villification: how the gut gets its villi. *Science* 342: 212 – 218

Sinner D, Kirilenko P, Rankin S, Wei E, Howard L, Kofron M, Heasman J, Woodland HR, Zorn AM (2006) Global analysis of the transcriptional network controlling Xenopus endoderm formation. *Development* 133: 1955 – 1966

Southard-Smith EM, Kos L, Pavan WJ (1998) Sox10 mutation disrupts neural crest development in Dom Hirschsprung mouse model. *Nat Genet* 18: 60 – 64

Spence JR, Lauf R, Shroyer NF (2011a) Vertebrate intestinal endoderm development. *Dev Dyn* 240: 501 – 520

Spence JR, Mayhew CN, Rankin SA, Kuhar MF, Vallance JE, Tolle K, Hoskins EE, Kalinichenko VV, Wells SI, Zorn AM, Shroyer NF, Wells JM (2011b) Directed differentiation of human pluripotent stem cells into intestinal tissue in vitro. *Nature* 470: 105 – 109

Stafford D, Prince VE (2002) Retinoic acid signaling is required for a critical early step in zebrafish pancreatic development. *Curr Biol* 12: 1215 – 1220

Stanger BZ, Datar R, Murtaugh LC, Melton DA (2005) Direct regulation of intestinal fate by Notch. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 102: 12443 – 12448

Strader AD, Woods SC (2005) Gastrointestinal hormones and food intake. *Gastroenterology* 128: 175 – 191

Takebe T, Sekine K, Enomura M, Koike H, Kimura M, Ogaeri T, Zhang R-R, Ueno Y, Zheng Y-W, Koike N, Aoyama S, Adachi Y, Taniguchi H (2013) Vascularized and functional human liver from an iPSC-derived organ bud transplant. *Nature* 499: 481 – 484

Talchai C, Xuan S, Kitamura T, DePinho RA, Accili D (2012) Generation of functional insulin-producing cells in the gut by Foxo1 ablation. *Nat Genet* 44: 406 – 412, S1

Tiso N, Filippi A, Pauls S, Bortolussi M, Argenton F (2002) BMP signalling regulates anteroposterior endoderm patterning in zebrafish. *Mech Dev* 118: 29 – 37

Toumi F, Neunlist M, Cassagnau E, Parois S, Laboisse CL, Galmiche J-P, Jarry A (2003) Human submucosal neurones regulate intestinal epithelial cell proliferation: evidence from a novel co-culture model. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 15: 239 – 242

Turnbaugh PJ, Ley RE, Mahowald MA, Magrini V, Mardis ER, Gordon JI (2006) An obesity-associated gut microbiome with increased capacity for energy harvest. *Nature* 444: 1027 – 1031

Underwood MA (2012) Paneth cells and necrotizing enterocolitis. *Gut Microbes* 3: 562 – 565

Van Landeghem L, Chevalier J, Mahé MM, Wedel T, Urvil P, Derkinderen P, Savidge T, Neunlist M (2011) Enteric glia promote intestinal mucosal healing via activation of focal adhesion kinase and release of proEGF. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 300: G976 – G987

Walton KD, Kolterud A, Czerwinski MJ, Bell MJ, Prakash A, Kushwaha J, Grosse AS, Schnell S, Gumucio DL (2012) Hedgehog-responsive mesenchymal clusters direct patterning and emergence of intestinal villi. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 109: 15817 – 15822

Wang J, Cortina G, Wu SV, Tran R, Cho J-H, Tsai M-J, Bailey TJ, Jamrich M, Ament ME, Treem WR, Hill ID, Vargas JH, Gershman G, Farmer DG, Reyen L, Martín MG (2006a) Mutant neurogenin-3 in congenital malabsorptive diarrhea. *N Engl J Med* 355: 270 – 280

Wang Y-C, Gallego-Arteche E, Iezza G, Yuan X, Matli MR, Choo S-P, Zuraek MB, Gogia R, Lynn FC, German MS, Bergsland EK, Donner DB, Warren RS, Nakakura EK (2009) Homeodomain transcription factor NKX2.2 functions in immature cells to control enteroendocrine differentiation and is expressed in gastrointestinal neuroendocrine tumors. *Endocr Relat Cancer* 16: 267 – 279

Wang Z, Dollé P, Cardoso WV, Niederreither K (2006b) Retinoic acid regulates morphogenesis and patterning of posterior foregut derivatives. *Dev Biol* 297: 433 – 445

Wang Z-K (2014) Intestinal microbiota pathogenesis and fecal microbiota transplantation for inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 20: 14805

Watson CL, Mahe MM, Múnera J, Howell JC, Sundaram N, Poling HM, Schweitzer JI, Vallance JE, Mayhew CN, Sun Y, Grabowski G, Finkbeiner SR, Spence JR, Shroyer NF, Wells JM, Helmrath MA (2014) An in vivo model of human small intestine using pluripotent stem cells. *Nat Med* 20: 1310 – 1314

Wells JM, Melton DA (2000) Early mouse endoderm is patterned by soluble factors from adjacent germ layers. *Development* 1572: 1563 – 1572

World Health Organization (2004) *WHO guidelines for drinking-water quality*. Geneva: World Health Organization

Wu JJ, Chen JX, Rothman TP, Gershon MD (1999) Inhibition of in vitro enteric neuronal development by endothelin-3: mediation by endothelin B receptors. *Development* 126: 1161 – 1173

Yamaguchi TP, Bradley A, McMahon AP, Jones S (1999) A Wnt5a pathway underlies outgrowth of multiple structures in the vertebrate embryo. *Development* 126: 1211 – 1223

Yang Q, Bermingham NA, Finegold MJ, Zoghbi HY (2001) Requirement of Math1 for secretory cell lineage commitment in the mouse intestine. *Science* 294: 2155 – 2158

Yang X, Dormann D, Münsterberg AE, Weijer CJ (2002) Cell movement patterns during gastrulation in the chick are controlled by positive and negative chemotaxis mediated by FGF4 and FGF8. *Dev Cell* 3: 425 – 437

Yui S, Nakamura T, Sato T, Nemoto Y, Mizutani T, Zheng X, Ichinose S, Nagaishi T, Okamoto R, Tsuchiya K, Clevers H, Watanabe M (2012) Functional engraftment of colon epithelium expanded in vitro from a single adult Lgr5$^+$ stem cell. *Nat Med* 18: 618 – 623

Zecchini V, Domaschenz R, Winton D, Jones P (2005) Notch signaling regulates the differentiation of post-mitotic intestinal epithelial cells. *Genes Dev* 19: 1686 – 1691

Zhang Z, Rankin SA, Zorn AM (2013) Different thresholds of Wnt-Frizzled 7 signaling coordinate proliferation, morphogenesis and fate of endoderm progenitor cells. *Dev Biol* 378: 1 – 12

Zhu L, Lee H-O, Jordan CS, Cantrell VA, Southard-Smith EM, Shin MK (2004) Spatiotemporal regulation of endothelin receptor-B by SOX10 in neural crest-derived enteric neuron precursors. *Nat Genet* 36: 732 – 737

Zorn AM, Butler K, Gurdon JB (1999) Anterior endomesoderm specification in Xenopus by Wnt/beta-catenin and TGF-beta signalling pathways. *Dev Biol* 209: 282 – 297

Zorn AM, Wells JM (2007) Molecular basis of vertebrate endoderm development. *Int Rev Cytol* 259: 49 – 111

Zorn AM, Wells JM (2009) NIH Public Access. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol* 25: 221 – 251

Review

THE EMBO JOURNAL

Focus: Induced Pluripotency & Cellular Reprogramming

Reprogramming of human cancer cells to pluripotency for models of cancer progression

Jungsun Kim & Kenneth S Zaret*

Abstract

The ability to study live cells as they progress through the stages of cancer provides the opportunity to discover dynamic networks underlying pathology, markers of early stages, and ways to assess therapeutics. Genetically engineered animal models of cancer, where it is possible to study the consequences of temporal-specific induction of oncogenes or deletion of tumor suppressors, have yielded major insights into cancer progression. Yet differences exist between animal and human cancers, such as in markers of progression and response to therapeutics. Thus, there is a need for human cell models of cancer progression. Most human cell models of cancer are based on tumor cell lines and xenografts of primary tumor cells that resemble the advanced tumor state, from which the cells were derived, and thus do not recapitulate disease progression. Yet a subset of cancer types have been reprogrammed to pluripotency or near-pluripotency by blastocyst injection, by somatic cell nuclear transfer and by induced pluripotent stem cell (iPS) technology. The reprogrammed cancer cells show that pluripotency can transiently dominate over the cancer phenotype. Diverse studies show that reprogrammed cancer cells can, in some cases, exhibit early-stage phenotypes reflective of only partial expression of the cancer genome. In one case, reprogrammed human pancreatic cancer cells have been shown to recapitulate stages of cancer progression, from early to late stages, thus providing a model for studying pancreatic cancer development in human cells where previously such could only be discerned from mouse models. We discuss these findings, the challenges in developing such models and their current limitations, and ways that iPS reprogramming may be enhanced to develop human cell models of cancer progression.

Keywords cancer; iPS; pluripotency; progression
DOI 10.15252/embj.201490736 | Received 5 December 2014 | Revised 24 December 2014 | Accepted 2 January 2015 | Published online 20 February 2015
The EMBO Journal (2015) 34: 739–747

Introduction

Over the past two decades, diverse cellular models of cancer, in combination with biochemical and imaging tools, have greatly improved the early diagnosis and treatment of various cancers. Tests exist for the early detection of cervical, colon, and breast cancers and mortality has been steadily declining (Arteaga *et al*, 2014). Despite these advances, cancers such as pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) retain a dismal prognosis due to a paucity of clinical symptoms and biomarkers for early-stage disease (Cantley *et al*, 2012). The failure to detect early disease prevents the application and testing of therapeutics that could be used to inhibit disease progression. Genetically engineered animal models in mouse and zebrafish have been developed for diverse cancers (Tuveson & Jacks, 2002; Liu & Leach, 2011; Ablain & Zon, 2013). Such models can provide insights into the basis of cancer development that have helped generate treatments, such as for acute promyelocytic leukemia (Wang & Chen, 2008; Nardella *et al*, 2011). Yet there are cross-species differences between animal and human cancers with regard to the size of tumors, cancer susceptibility, spectrum of age-related cancers, and telomere lengths (DePinho, 2000; Rangarajan & Weinberg, 2003). Cancer therapeutics that work in mouse models can fail in clinical human trials (Ledford, 2011; Begley & Ellis, 2012). To complement these limitations, human solid tumors, organoid cultures thereof (Gao *et al*, 2014; Li *et al*, 2014), and cell lines (Sharma *et al*, 2010) have been engrafted into immunocompromised mice either as tumor fragments (Tentler *et al*, 2012), dispersed cells, or cells sorted for tumor initiating cells/cancer stem cells (CSC) (Ishizawa *et al*, 2010; Nguyen *et al*, 2012). In these contexts, tumors inevitably arise that resemble the parental tumor state from which the cells were derived and do not undergo early-stage progression (Tentler *et al*, 2012). Primary human mammary epithelial cells can undergo cancer progression in mouse xenografts, but require prior transformation with oncogenes rather than employing endogenous genetic changes found in tumors (Wu *et al*, 2009). Currently, there are few human cell models of cancer progression that are dependent upon naturally occurring genetic mutations.

Here, we describe the use of somatic cell nuclear transfer (SCNT) on mouse cancer cells and induced pluripotent stem (iPS) cell technology to model human cancer progression. Cancer progression by the SCNT or iPS reprogrammed cells can help reveal new networks for early-stage disease, potential early-stage biomarkers, and human cell models in which therapeutics can be assessed. We first discuss the history of reprogramming of cancer cells to pluripotency, as initiated with blastocyst injection and somatic nuclear transfer. We also describe mechanisms that may underlie a temporary

Department of Cell and Developmental Biology, Institute for Regenerative Medicine, Abramson Cancer Center, Tumor Biology Program, Perelman School of Medicine, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA
*Corresponding author. Tel: +1 215 573 5813; E-mail: zaret@upenn.edu

dominance of pluripotency over the cancer genome and the use of iPS technology to elicit such dominance. We then review the advances and challenges associated with iPS-based approaches, along with the future prospects for developing new human cell models of cancer progression.

Early examples of cancer cell reprogramming to pluripotency

Several lines of evidence show that cancer progression can be elicited by reversible epigenetic changes as well as by irreversible mutations in oncogenic and tumor suppressor genes (Esteller, 2007). The first experimental evidence of tumor reversibility was described in crown-gall tumors in plants over a half century ago (Braun, 1959). Braun had hypothesized that the individual pluripotent teratoma cells of crown-gall tumors might be recovered from the cancer in grafting experiments. To test his idea, he grafted the shoots from crown-gall teratoma cells serially to the cut stem ends of the healthy tobacco plants. The grafted teratoma tissue gradually developed more normal appearing shoots, which eventually flowered and developed seeds. He concluded that 'the cellular alteration in crown gall did not involve a somatic mutation at the nuclear gene level and rather some yet uncharacterized cytoplasmic entity is responsible for the cellular changes that underlie the tumorous state in the crown-gall disease.'

In mammalian development, the fertilized egg, or zygote, undergoes cell divisions to reach the blastocyst stage. The blastocyst contains the first differentiated structures, consisting of an outer layer of trophectoderm and an inner cell mass (ICM) that develops into the embryo and yolk sac. Many cells within the inner cell mass are considered pluripotent, because they give rise to all three germ layers (endoderm, ectoderm, and mesoderm) and derived tissues in the embryo. The most stringent test of whether exogenous mammalian cells are pluripotent is to inject them into a blastocyst and determine whether they contribute to the embryo and, ultimately, the animal proper (Lin, 1966). Individual malignant stem cells of murine embryonal teratomas (embryonic carcinoma, EC) injected into 280 blastocysts yielded 45 apparently normal embryos or fetuses, and such cells injected into 183 blastocysts yielded 48 apparently normal live mice (Mintz & Illmensee, 1975). All of three fetuses analyzed were mosaic, with substantial tissue contributions from teratoma cells, indicating the cells' pluripotency. Notably, many genes that had been silent or undetectable in the tumor, such as immunoglobulin, hemoglobin, MUP, agouti genes, were expressed in the appropriate tissues. The authors concluded that 'conversion to neoplasia did not involve structural changes in the genome, but rather a change in gene expression.'

The developmental pluripotency of somatic cell nucleus can be tested by implanting them into enucleated oocytes, that is, somatic cell nuclear transfer (SCNT) (Gurdon *et al*, 1958). By SCNT, a subset of cancer cells such as certain renal tumor cells, medulloblastoma cells, RAS-induced melanoma cells, and EC cells were able to be reprogrammed to pluripotency (McKinnell *et al*, 1969; Blelloch *et al*, 2004; Hochedlinger *et al*, 2004). Donor nuclei from triploid frog renal tumors were reprogrammed by injection into enucleated frog eggs, developed into blastulas with a higher efficiency than diploid nuclei (23% versus 7.7%). Yet only 21% of the triploid, tumor-derived blastulas developed into swimming embryos compared to 100% of the blastulas from normal diploid nuclei (McKinnell *et al*, 1969). The living triploid tadpoles differentiated into functional embryonic tissues of many types and the descendant tail fins regenerated appropriately, demonstrating pluripotency of the reprogrammed tumor genome (McKinnell *et al*, 1969).

Hochedlinger *et al* (2004) attempted the reprogramming by SCNT of diverse mouse cancer cells, including a $p53^{-/-}$ lymphoma, moloney murine leukemia virus-induced leukemia, PML-RAR transgene-induced leukemia, hypomethylated Chip/c lymphoma, $p53^{-/-}$ breast cancer cell line, and an ink4a/$Arf^{-/-}$, RAS-inducible melanoma cell line. All SCNT-reprogrammed cancer cell lines, but no primary tumor cells, were able to develop normal appearing blastocysts, with much greater efficiency in cancer cell lines harboring mutant tumor suppressors. SCNT-derived blastocysts whose zona pellucida was removed were placed onto irradiated murine embryonic fibroblast to derive embryonic stem (ES) cells. However, such SCNT-ES cell lines were only made from an Ink4a/$Arf^{-/-}$, RAS-inducible melanoma cell line, suggesting that only certain cancer genomes or cell types are amenable to the manipulation.

To assess their autonomous developmental potential, melanoma SCNT-ES cells were injected into tetraploid blastocysts, where transplanted wild-type ES cells can exclusively give rise to the embryo and tetraploid cells become the placenta (Wang *et al*, 1997). The resulting embryos developed up to day 9.5 of mouse gestation (E9.5) with a beating heart, closed neural tube, and developing limb and tail buds. Yet at later stages, embryos were not recovered, presumably because of the reactivation of irreversible genetic alterations of the melanoma.

However, in a chimeric blastocyst assay, where normal and donor cells can contribute to the embryo, the SCNT-ES cells, despite having major severe chromosomal changes from the original cancer, showed remarkable differentiation by contributing to skin, intestine, heart, kidney, lungs, thymus, and liver in newborn chimeric mice and to adult lineages such as the lymphoid compartment in Rag2-deficient chimeric mice (Hochedlinger *et al*, 2004). These findings show that the oocyte cytoplasm can reprogram the epigenetic state of the donor cancer cell nucleus into a pluripotent state that supports differentiation into multiple somatic cell types.

The SCNT-ES-derived adult chimeric mice developed multiple primary melanoma lesions with an average latency of 19 days, comparable to the latency required for the development of recurrent tumors or the emergence of tumors derived from transplanted melanoma cells (Chin *et al*, 1999). Interestingly, 33% of the chimeras from melanoma SCNT-ES cells developed rhabdomyosarcoma, which has an overlapping pathway with melanoma, showing the consequence of the 'melanoma genome' expressed in a different tissue (Hochedlinger *et al*, 2004) (Fig 1, top).

Li *et al* (2003) tested the epigenetic reprogramming of medulloblastoma, a pediatric brain tumor, originating from the granule neuron precursors of the developing cerebellum. The medulloblastoma cells were isolated from $Ptc^{+/-}$ mice and used for SCNT. Although transferred SCNT cells developed into blastocysts that were morphologically indistinguishable from those derived nuclei of spleen control cells, no viable embryos were identified after E8.5 in the transplanted pseudo-pregnant mice. Intriguingly, while the embryos at E7.5 days appeared grossly normal and contained all three germ layers as well as an ectoplacental cone, a chorion, an

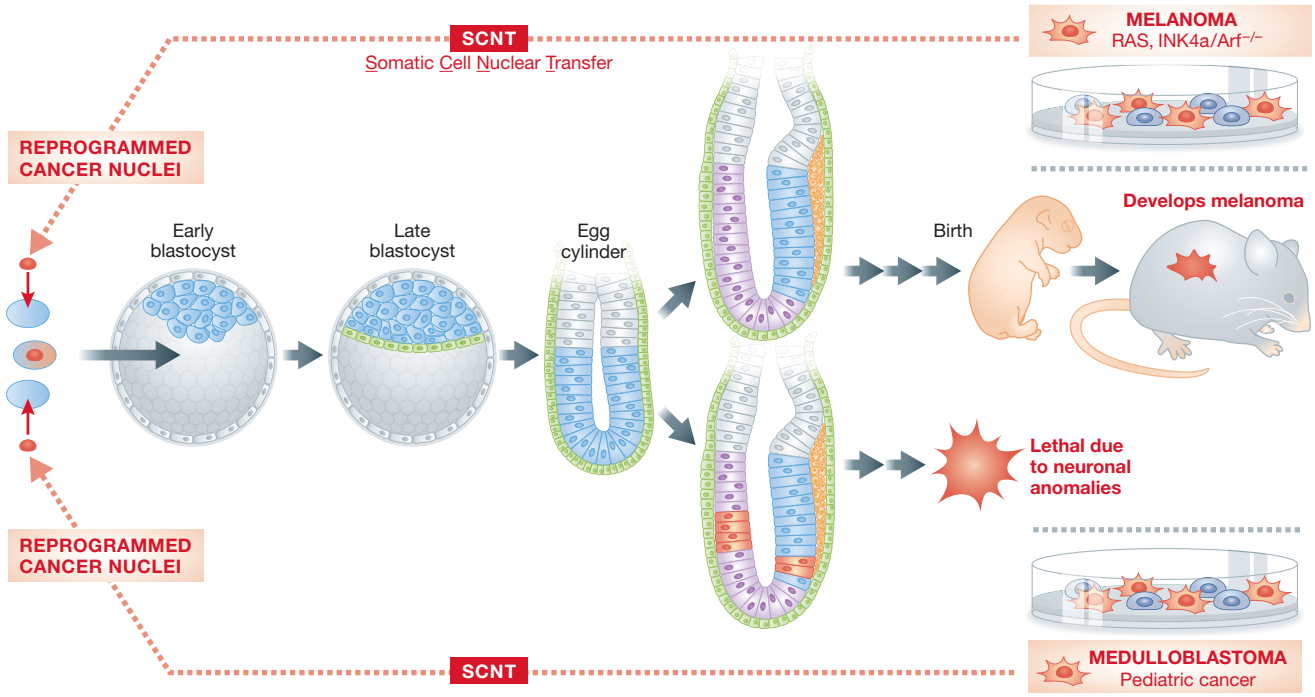


Figure 1. Cancer cell reprogramming by somatic cell nuclear transfer (SCNT).
Somatic cell nuclear transfer from medulloblastoma (left) or melanoma (right) cells leads to reprogramming of the cancer cell nucleus. When the resulting reprogrammed cells are injected into blastocysts, dominance of the early pluripotent state apparently suppresses the cancer phenotype and allows partial embryonic development. From medulloblastoma cells, lethality results shortly after gastrulation, whereas from melanoma cells in chimeric blastocysts, the cancer genome cells contribute to many tissues but melanoma ultimately ensues.

amnion, a Reichert's membrane, a yolk sac cavity, and an amniotic cavity, embryos at E8.5 showed more extensive differentiation of the cephalic vesicles and neural tubes, implying that the lack of viable embryos after E8.5 could be attributed to dysregulated neuronal lineages. Thus, this report demonstrates the mutation(s) underlying medulloblastoma was suppressed during pre-implantation and early germ layer stages, and became activated within the context of the cerebellar granule cell lineage, ultimately leading to embryonic lethality (Fig 1, bottom).

In summary, the cancer genome can be suppressed during the pre-implantation blastocyst stage when certain cancer cells are first reprogrammed to pluripotency by nuclear transfer (SCNT-ES). The resultant pluripotent cells can then differentiate into multiple early developmental cell types of the embryo. Yet, later in organogenesis, the cancer genome becomes activated, particularly in the cell lineage in which the original cancer occurred. This leads to the question of how the pluripotency network can suppress the cancer phenotype sufficiently to allow early tissue differentiation and development.

Expression of proto-oncogenes during development and suppression by pluripotency

The expression of proto-oncogenes is spatially and temporally regulated during embryogenesis, with certain proto-oncogenes being transiently activated in only certain tissues and in late lineage specification (Pfeifer-Ohlsson *et al*, 1984, 1985; Slamon & Cline, 1984; Adamson, 1987; Wilkinson *et al*, 1987; Pachnis *et al*, 1993). For examples, tyrosine kinase c-Src mRNA is transiently expressed between days E8–10 of mouse gestation and gradually decreases thereafter (Slamon & Cline, 1984). In human cancers, Src tyrosine activity is correlated with Src protein expression (Verbeek *et al*, 1996).

Proto-oncogene expression during development can be modulated by epigenetic states. For instance, the repressive histone mark H3K27me3 and active histone mark H3K4me3 both are enriched at the promoter of proto-oncogenes c-*SRC*, *AKT1*, and *MYB* in human ES cells, but only the active histone mark H3K4me3 is enriched in the K562 cancer cell line (ENCODE). (Ram *et al*, 2011). While inactivation of tumor suppressor genes such as *CDKN2A* and *TP53* is observed in many human cancers, including PDAC (Nigro *et al*, 1989; Caldas *et al*, 1994), genes encoding histone modifying enzymes are often mutated in cancer (Dawson & Kouzarides, 2012; Kadoch *et al*, 2013) and such enzymes can bind to and repress the *CDKN2A* locus (Bracken *et al*, 2007). Moreover, the conformation status of p53 can be changed in the pluripotent state. Undifferentiated ES cells express high levels of p53 in a wild-type conformation, but there is a shift in the conformational status of p53 to a mutant form upon RA-induced differentiation (Sabapathy *et al*, 1997). Mouse ES cells harboring oncogenic mutant alleles of *p53* maintain pluripotency and are benign, with normal karyotypes compared to ES cells, when the *p53* gene is knocked out (Rivlin *et al*, 2014).

The embryonic stem cell microenvironment, presumably mimicking that in the blastocyst, can contribute to the suppression of uncontrolled cell growth in the pluripotent state; this helps

to keep the balance between self-renewal and differentiation. Aggressive melanoma cells were reprogrammed into melanocyte-like cells and invasiveness was reduced, at least in part, by culturing the cells on Matrigel that was conditioned by human ES cells, suggesting suppressive, anti-invasive cues associated with the huES microenvironment (Postovit *et al*, 2006). The aggressive melanoma and breast carcinoma cells express Nodal, which is essential for human ES cell pluripotency, yet these cancers did not express Lefty, an inhibitor of Nodal, which is expressed in human ES cells. Exposure of the cancer cell lines to ES-conditioned Matrigel resulted in a decrease in tumorigenesis accompanied by a reduction in clonogenicity and an increase in apoptosis, directly associated with secretion of Lefty from huES cells (Postovit *et al*, 2008).

In conclusion, early developmental signals naturally regulate proto-oncogenes so that their expression can be suppressed until an appropriate developmental stage where the genes function. Concordantly, the changing early embryonic environment and the mimic of such environments during ES cell culture can suppress oncogenic phenotypes of cancer-derived cells.

Reprogramming of somatic cells to pluripotency by OSKM

Human and mouse somatic cells (such as fibroblasts, blood cells, etc.) can be reprogrammed into a pluripotent ES-like cells, called induced pluripotent stem (iPS) cells, by the ectopic expression of transcription factors such as Oct4, Sox2, Klf4, and c-Myc (OSKM) (Takahashi & Yamanaka, 2006). As this method does not need oocytes or blastocysts that are used for SCNT, it is a much more accessible technique and it side-steps ethical issues associated with using early human embryos. The pluripotency of human iPS cells can be validated by cell markers, genomic RNA expression profiles, epigenetic profiles, and teratoma assays; the latter being when (e.g., human) iPS cells are injected subcutaneously into mice that are genetically deficient in innate and acquired immunity (e.g., NOD-SCID (Shultz *et al*, 2005)). Details of iPS cell generation and use are discussed elsewhere in this issue.

Reprogramming of cancer cells to pluripotency or near-pluripotency by OSKM

In the first experiments on cancer reprogramming by SCNT described above, only a subset of cancer cell types could be reprogrammed to pluripotency. Despite the remarkable demonstration of the potential dominance of the pluripotent state over cancer, major questions remained. Are there particular cancer mutations that allow or block the ability of a cancer cells to be reprogrammed to pluripotency? Does such ability to be reprogrammed relate to the tissue type of the cancer? At what stage of using re-differentiation of the reprogrammed cancer cells does the cancer genome regain dominance over the cell phenotype? Can understanding the transition between pluripotency and cancer provide new insight into how to control the growth of cancer cells? Now that the relatively simple iPS technology can be applied to reprogram cancer cells, independent of oocytes and blastocysts, these questions have been revisited.

Reprogramming of chronic myeloid leukemia (CML)

The initial chronic phase of CML, which originates from hematopoietic stem cells of the bone marrow, is caused by a BCR-ABL fusion mutation that drives cell expansion, while the CML clones retain differentiation potential (Melo & Barnes, 2007). The chronic phase of CML progresses into an accelerated phase, followed by the blast crisis, terminal phase of CML upon acquisition of a second lesion. Once CML reaches the blast crisis stage, the cells lose the ability to differentiate and immature leukemia cells overgrow. Based upon the dependency of CML on BCR-ABL activated tyrosine kinase, tyrosine kinase inhibitors such as imatinib improved the long-term survival rate of CML patients. However, the inhibitor cannot completely eradicate CML cells and often lead to the recurrence of CML clones after its discontinuation (Melo & Barnes, 2007). Can CML in the terminal blast crisis stage be reprogrammed into iPS cells? If so, can CML-iPS cells recapitulate the initial chronic phase of CML, which has differentiation potential? Can be the dependency of CML on BCR-ABL signaling be altered?

Carette *et al* (2010) reprogrammed a cell line derived from blast crisis stage CML by infecting with a retrovirus expressing OSKM. Subcutaneous injection of the resulting CML-iPS cells into NOD-SCID mice revealed teratomas which contained cells of three germ layers, indicating pluripotency. During *in vitro* differentiation, the CML-iPS cells were able to differentiate into cells expressing the pan-T cell marker $CD43^+$ and the hematopoietic lineage marker $CD45^+$, as well as the stem cell marker $CD34^+$, demonstrating a restoration of differentiation potential into hematopoietic lineages. The loss of the CML phenotype in CML-iPS cells and the recovery of differentiation can be viewed as a recapitulation of the chronic phase of CML, despite starting with blast crisis stage CML-iPS cells.

Interestingly, whereas parental CML cell lines were dependent on the BCR-ABL pathway, the CML-iPS cell lines were independent of BCR-ABL signaling and showed resistance to imatinib, an inhibitor of BCR-ABL signaling (Carette *et al*, 2010). The loss of BCR-ABL dependency was also observed in cells differentiated *in vitro* into neuronal or fibroblast-like cells. Yet when the cells were differentiated *in vitro* to hematopoietic lineage cells, they became sensitive to imatinib, suggesting that the recovery of oncogenic dependency as the CML-iPS cells underwent hematopoietic differentiation. Thus, oncogenic mutations can be dynamically expressed when cancer cells are converted to pluripotency and then re-differentiated.

Similar observations were seen by another group that generated iPS cells from primary $CD34^+$ cells which were isolated from bone marrow mononuclear cells of a CML chronic phase patient, by retroviral infection with OSKM (Kumano *et al*, 2012). The CML-iPS cells underwent normal hematopoiesis during *in vitro* differentiation. The differentiated hematopoietic progenitors ($CD34^+CD45^+$) from CML-iPS cells produced colonies of mature erythroid cells, granulocyte–macrophage cells, or mix lineages with a distribution of colony size, morphologies, and kinetics of growth and maturation that was similar to non-cancer iPS cells. The CML-iPS-derived hematopoietic progenitors did not show a CML phenotype *in vivo*, when intravenously engrafted into NSG mice receiving minimal irradiation. Whereas the parental $CD34^+$ cells responded to imatinib, the CML-iPS derivatives and immature $CD34^+CD38^-CD45^+CD90^+$ cells derived from the CML-iPS cells were not sensitive to imatinib. Yet mature hematopoietic cells ($CD34^-CD45^+$) derived from the CML-iPS cells restored their sensitivity to imatinib. Given that the

expression of the proto-oncogene C-ABL is high at mouse embryonic day 10 when the first definitive hematopoietic stem cells are generated (Muller *et al*, 1982; Sanchez *et al*, 1996), the CML-iPS cells, corresponding to mouse blastocyst cells at embryonic day 3–5, may express regulatory factors that suppress C-ABL signaling. Thus, understanding the underlying mechanisms that counteract BCR-ABL signaling in CML-iPS cells and their immature, newly differentiated progeny could provide insight into the resistant to imatinib. Furthermore, it may be possible to screen new drugs that can inhibit CML clones at this stage and then treat CML patients with such drugs in combination with classical inhibitors. Taken together, these studies show how reprogramming to pluripotency can modulate oncogene expression and recapitulate the initial chronic phase of CML.

Reprogramming of gastrointestinal cancer cell lines

Miyoshi *et al* (2010) hypothesized that reprogramming of gastrointestinal cancer cell lines into iPS would allow the cells to undergo differentiation and enhanced sensitivity to therapeutics. The iPS cells arising in their experiments were capable of differentiation into cells of the three germ layers *in vitro*. Interestingly, while the parental gastrointestinal cancer cell lines generated tumors within four months of injection into NOD/SCID mice, such tumorigenesis was not seen with the differentiated cells arising from the iPS cells derived from the cell lines. In accord with these observations, the gastrointestinal cancer-derived iPS cells, upon differentiation, expressed higher levels of the tumor suppressor genes $p16^{Ink4\alpha}$ and *p53,* slower proliferation and were sensitive to differentiation-inducing treatment (Miyoshi *et al*, 2010). These findings show that the pluripotency state imposed by the OSKM factors can partially suppress the cancer phenotype in the gastrointestinal cell lines.

Reprogramming of glioblastoma (GBM) neural stem cells and human sarcoma

To determine whether cancer-specific epigenetic changes can be altered or erased by reprogramming and how such might correlate with transcriptional changes and suppression of malignancy, primary GBM-derived neural stem cells (GNS) were reprogrammed using piggyBac transposon vectors expressing OCT4 and KLF4 (Stricker *et al*, 2013). Widespread resetting of epigenetic methylation occurred in the GNS-iPS cells in cancer-specific methylation variable positions (cMVPs) and also at the GBM tumor suppressor genes *CDKN1C* (cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 1C) and *TES* and was associated with the genes' derepression. Interestingly, teratomas from the GNS-iPS cells generated compact and non-infiltrative cells of all three germ layers. The majority of cells in the teratomas developed into highly proliferating neural progenitors, showing epigenetic memory of the cell type used to generate iPS cells.

Primary GBM develops rapidly from neural precursors, apparently without clinical or histopathological evidence of less malignant precursor lesions (Ohgaki & Kleihues, 2013). In accordance with the human cancer, neural progenitor cells that were differentiated from iPS-GNS recapitulated aggressive glioblastoma when transplanted into the adult mouse brain (Stricker *et al*, 2013). In contrast, non-neural mesodermal progenitors, differentiated from two independent GNS-iPS clones *in vitro*, sustained the expression of TES and CDKN1C formed benign tumors and failed to infiltrate the surrounding brain (Stricker *et al*, 2013).

To determine whether human cancer cells can be reprogrammed to pluripotency and then terminally differentiated with concomitant loss of tumorigenicity, human sarcoma cell lines were reprogrammed by infecting with human OSKM along with NANOG and LIN28 (Zhang *et al*, 2013). In xenograft assays in non-immune mice, the reprogrammed sarcoma cells formed tumors at slower rates than their parental cell lines. The sarcoma-iPS-derived tumors were of lower grade, exhibited more necrosis, reduced staining for a marker of proliferation, and reduced expression of the vimentin mesenchymal marker than tumors from the sarcoma parental cell lines. Thus, reprogramming decreased the aggressiveness of the cancer compared to the cells' parental counterparts. All 32 oncogenes and 82 tumor suppressor genes whose promoter DNA was initially methylated, were demethylated as a result of reprogramming, indicating that the reprogramming process was accompanied by major epigenetic changes in growth- and cancer-related genes. By ANOVA of gene expression profiles and principal component analysis, the reprogrammed sarcoma cells, though only partially reprogrammed, were more like embryonic stem cells compared to mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) and partially reprogrammed fibroblasts, demonstrating that the sarcoma cell line was de-differentiated into a pre-MSC state (Zhang *et al*, 2013).

The above studies with cancer cell lines showed that the pluripotency factors and the pluripotency state can suppress features of the cancer phenotype, restore differentiation potential, perturb epigenetics via DNA methylation, and alter cancer-related gene expression.

Reprogramming of human primary pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma

Taking together the principles learned from SCNT and iPS studies of cancer cell lines, it seemed possible that generating iPS cells from primary human cancer cells would allow the cells to be propagated indefinitely in the pluripotent state and that, upon differentiation, a subset of the cells would undergo early developmental stages of the human cancer, thereby providing a live cell human model to study cancer progression (Kim *et al*, 2013). However, generating iPS had not been achieved with cancer epithelial cells from primary human adenocarcinomas. To test this idea, primary pancreatic epithelial cells isolated from pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) cells and normal cells at the margin of the tumors were reprogrammed by introducing OSKM. Colonies came up frequently from the margin epithelial cultures and very rarely from the cancer epithelial cultures. Once OSKM factors were suppressed, all ES-like colonies differentiated or died; therefore, low level of OSKM expression was retained and the ES-like colonies that arose were called 'iPS-like', as they were apparently unable to completely sustain a pluripotency program.

One cancer iPS-like line, designated 10–22 cells, harbored classical PDAC mutations, including an activated *KRAS* allele, a *CDKN2A* heterozygous deletion, and decreased *SMAD4* gene copy levels, as well as retained the gross chromosomal alterations seen in the parental, primary cancer epithelial cells, demonstrating that the PDAC-iPS line was derived from advanced PDAC cells (Kim *et al*, 2013). The 10-22, PDAC-iPS-like line differentiated into all three germ layer descendants during *in vitro* embryoid body differentiation, though neuronal lineages were under-represented. *In vivo* teratoma assays in non-immune mice showed that the 10–22 cells generated multiple germ layer tissues, but preferred to generate endodermal ductal structures. Notably, the ductal structures at

3 months resembled pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasias (PanIN), regarded as a potential precursor to PDAC, and by 9 months the cells progressed to the invasive stage. By contrast, an isogenic line of iPS-like cells derived from the tumor margin gave rise to ductal teratomas, but not PanINs or invasive ductal features. Thus, reprogramming of the PDAC created an experimental model in which human PDAC progression could be studied in live cells.

A major cause for the lethality of PDAC is that there are no reliable biomarkers or clinical phenotypes of the early stages of the disease. To discover potential biomarkers for early PDAC progression, PanIN lesions at 3 months were isolated from non-immune mouse teratomas and cultured in serum-free medium as organoids (Kim *et al*, 2013). After 6 days of culture, the medium was harvested and subjected to mass spectroscopic analysis, in order to discover protein markers that are secreted or released from early-stage human PDAC. By subtracting the secreted and released proteins of the organoids from such proteins of contralateral control tissue and of the 10–22 cells grown under pluripotency conditions, 107 proteins specific to the PanIN-stage samples were discovered. Of these, 64% of released or secreted proteins were seen in databases of genes, proteins, and networks expressed within human PanIN and PDAC cells, further validating the PanIN status of the organoids derived from the 10–22 cell teratomas.

The proteins released or secreted from the PanIN organoids fell into three major networks, including interconnected networks for TGF-β and integrin signaling, and for the transcription factor HNF4α. Notably, HNF4a is not or barely expressed in normal pancreatic ductal cells, poorly expressed in the PanIN1 stage, but is activated in PanIN2 and PanIN3 stages, invasive stages, and in early, well-differentiated human pancreatic cancer (Kim *et al*, 2013). HNF4a then decreases markedly and becomes undetectable in advanced or undifferentiated PDAC. Thus, being able to reconstitute PDAC progression with 10–22 cells revealed the activation of an HNF4a network distinctive for the late PanIN stages and well-differentiated PDAC; this network activated during PDAC progression would have been missed in studies of late-stage tumor cells.

In conclusion, although handful of reports have demonstrated the reprogramming of cancer by iPS technology and only a subset of cancer cells are amenable to the process, common lessons can be drawn. (1) The differentiation potential of the cancer cells can be restored, at least in part. (2) Epigenetic states are altered markedly during reprogramming to pluripotency or near-pluripotency. (3) The reprogrammed cells exhibit a reduced aggressive cancer phenotype in teratoma assays, which may be concomitant with suppression of oncogenes from the original cancer and activation of tumor suppressor genes. (4) The reprogrammed cells can re-acquire the cancer phenotype when they differentiate into the lineage from which the iPS line was derived. Indeed, the iPS or iPS-like reprogrammed cancer cells retain a propensity to do so, compared to other lineages. (5) The iPS-like reprogrammed cancer cells can be used to study the progression of the cancer phenotype (Fig 2).

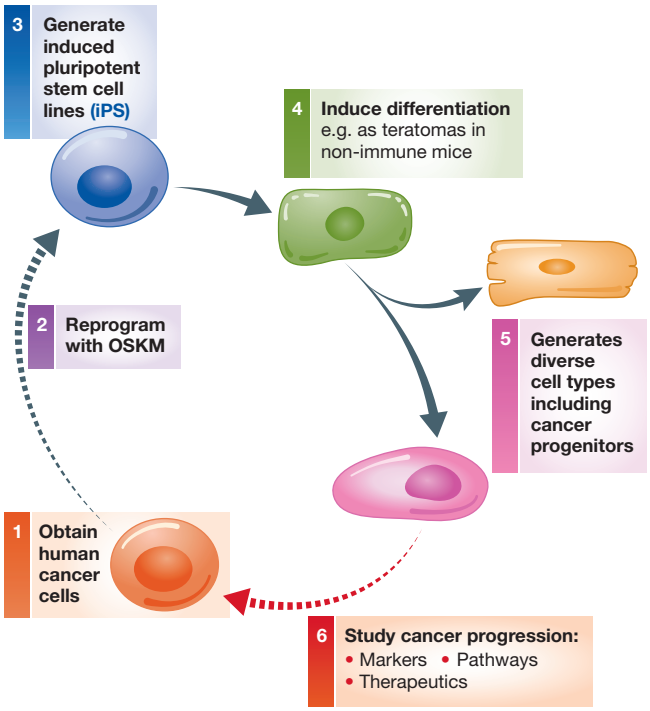


Figure 2. Cancer cell reprogramming by iPS and recapitulation of cancer progression.
Scenario for developing iPS lines from human cancer cells (1–3), inducing their differentiation to generate cancer progenitors (4–5), and using the cancer progenitors to study features of cancer progression (6). By this means, late-stage human cancers can be reprogrammed to recapitulate early-stage disease and progression for discovering markers, pathways, and therapeutics.

Questions for the future

Many questions remain. How do the pluripotency factors and reprogramming process partially suppress the cancer phenotype? How might such suppression be restricted to the lineage from which the cancer iPS cells were derived? During the differentiation of cancer iPS cells, how do the cells harboring the late-stage cancer genome undergo disease progression, as opposed to immediately developing the late-stage, parental cancer phenotype? What is the basis by which cancer iPS lines are so difficult to generate? How can the process be improved, to create more models for human cancer progression? While definitive answers to these questions are not in hand, hints about underlying mechanisms are arising in different areas, as discussed next.

Control of cancer versus pluripotency

As for SCNT, iPS technology was able to reprogram a subset of cancer cells to the pluripotent or near-pluripotent state and restore differentiation potential to the cells. Pluripotent ES cells and iPS cells have epigenetic features that may be reciprocal to those in cancer cells (Suva *et al*, 2013). For instance, comprehensive high-throughput relative methylation analysis demonstrated the existence of two independent epigenetic mechanisms for cell reprogramming and tumorigenesis. Hypomethylated, 'differentially methylated regions' (DMRs) that can occur in iPS reprogramming were hypermethylated DMRs in colon cancer (Doi *et al*, 2009). Seventy-seven percent of cancer-specific methylation variable positions (cMVPs) were hypermethylated and 23% were hypomethylated in GBM

neural stem cell (GNS) (Stricker *et al*, 2013). More than 44% of these cMVPs were reset during reprogramming of GNS to GNS-iPS along with a majority of targets of the Polycomb complex (Stricker *et al*, 2013). Furthermore, oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes can become demethylated as a result of iPS reprogramming, which is the opposite of the methylation of tumor suppressor genes seen during cancer progression (Zhang *et al*, 2013). ATP-dependent SWI/SNF complexes are considered to be tumor suppressors, since recurrent mutations of Brg1 subunits of the complex have been observed in various human cancers (Wilson & Roberts, 2011), including pancreatic cancer (Jones *et al*, 2008; Shain *et al*, 2012). The loss of the Brg1 BAF complex promoted the formation of intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasms and PDAC (von Figura *et al*, 2014). By contrast, overexpression of Brg1 and Baf155 components of the BAF complex, along with OSKM, enhances reprogramming to iPS (Singhal *et al*, 2010). Together, these findings show that common factors and epigenetic features can differentially elicit tumor formation or reprogramming to pluripotency.

While the coordinate, ectopic expression of OSKM induces reprogramming of somatic cells pluripotency (Takahashi & Yamanaka, 2006), activation of individual pluripotency factors can contribute to tumorigenesis. For instance, the inducible expression of OCT4 in mice initiated dysplasia by preventing the differentiation of multipotent lineages (Hochedlinger *et al*, 2005). The ectopic expression of OCT4 in human melanoma cells produced a more aggressive, cancer stem cell-like melanoma (Kumar *et al*, 2012). Furthermore, whereas reprogramming to pluripotency in the mouse can produce well-differentiated teratomas (Abad *et al*, 2013), partial reprogramming in mice yields tumors (Ohnishi *et al*, 2014). These findings indicate that the pluripotency transcription factors are integrated into networks that govern cancer phenotypes.

An unexplained feature of the use of cancer-derived iPS cells is that the cells harbor the mutations of the late-stage cancer from which the iPS cells were derived, but, as described above, the cancer iPS cells can exhibit disease progression; that is, not simply return to the late-stage phenotype from which they were derived. It follows that the disease progression exhibited by the models may not reflect that seen during the sequential accumulation of cancer driver mutations as might occur in natural tumor development. Yet in human PDAC progression, PanIN2 cells can harbor somatic mutations required for PDAC development, but it can take years for the cells to acquire metastatic activity (Yachida *et al*, 2010; Murphy *et al*, 2013). Thus, even during natural PDAC tumor development, epigenetic or extrinsic factors may be crucial for progression. The attenuation of such factors may occur transiently during reprogramming to pluripotency, and the release from pluripotency can thus mirror the progression to the cancer phenotype seen *in vivo*.

Low efficiency of reprogramming cancer cells to pluripotency

Cancer cells are reprogrammed very inefficiently and only subset of cancers are amenable to reprogramming. Certain mutations might make cancer cells refractory to reprogramming; that is, 'non-suppressible' by pluripotency. One iPS line out of 8 derived from PDAC contained the primary PDAC driver allele $KRAS^{G12D}$, even though 78% of starting primary cancer epithelial cells contained $KRAS^{G12D}$ (Kim *et al*, 2013). Conceivably, secondary mutations arising during iPS formation allowed the $KRAS^{G12D}$ cells to be reprogrammed. Furthermore, aneuploidy in cancer could cause the cellular stress responses such as activation of *p53* through the stress kinase *p38* (Thompson & Compton, 2010), thus possibly impeding reprogramming. PDAC epithelial cells from patients pre-treated with radiation did not produce any iPS colonies, perhaps due to senescence induced by irradiation and DNA damage (J.K. and K.S.Z, unpublished observations). Given that many cancer patients are treated with chemotherapy and irradiation prior to surgical resection, such treatments may prevent the creation of iPS lines.

The apparent preference for pluripotent cells to regenerate the cancer type from which they were derived reflects the tendency of iPS cell lines to preferentially differentiate into their lineages of origin (Bar-Nur *et al*, 2011; Kim *et al*, 2011). This 'deficiency' in exhibiting equal pluripotency for all cell lineages can be an advantage in developing human cell models of cancer progression, whereby the cancer iPS lines preferentially recapitulate stages of the cancer type of interest. Thus, despite the difficulties and caveats in generating human cancer iPS models, the examples covered in this review provide new insights into disease progression. It is hoped that a better understanding of how to create iPS cells from human cancers, and epithelial cancers in particular, will provide more opportunities to model and understand other types of solid tumors.

Acknowledgements

Research on the project is supported by NIH grant R37GM36477 and funding from the Abramson Cancer Center with Penn Medicine to K.S.Z.

Conflict of interest

The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

References

Abad M, Mosteiro L, Pantoja C, Canamero M, Rayon T, Ors I, Grana O, Megias D, Dominguez O, Martinez D, Manzanares M, Ortega S, Serrano M (2013) Reprogramming in vivo produces teratomas and iPS cells with totipotency features. *Nature* 502: 340 – 345

Ablain J, Zon LI (2013) Of fish and men: using zebrafish to fight human diseases. *Trends Cell Biol* 23: 584 – 586

Adamson ED (1987) Oncogenes in development. *Development* 99: 449 – 471

Arteaga CL, Adamson PC, Engelman JA, Foti M, Gaynor RB, Hilsenbeck SG, Limburg PJ, Lowe SW, Mardis ER, Ramsey S, Rebbeck TR, Richardson AL, Rubin EH, Weiner GJ, Sweeney SM, Honey K, Bachen J, Driscoll P, Hobin J, Ingram J *et al* (2014) AACR cancer progress report 2014. *Clin Cancer Res* 20: S1 – S112

Bar-Nur O, Russ HA, Efrat S, Benvenisty N (2011) Epigenetic memory and preferential lineage-specific differentiation in induced pluripotent stem cells derived from human pancreatic islet Beta cells. *Cell Stem Cell* 9: 17 – 23

Begley CG, Ellis LM (2012) Drug development: raise standards for preclinical cancer research. *Nature* 483: 531 – 533

Blelloch RH, Hochedlinger K, Yamada Y, Brennan C, Kim M, Mintz B, Chin L, Jaenisch R (2004) Nuclear cloning of embryonal carcinoma cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 101: 13985 – 13990

Bracken AP, Kleine-Kohlbrecher D, Dietrich N, Pasini D, Gargiulo G, Beekman C, Theilgaard-Monch K, Minucci S, Porse BT, Marine JC, Hansen KH, Helin

K (2007) The Polycomb group proteins bind throughout the INK4A-ARF locus and are disassociated in senescent cells. *Genes Dev* 21: 525 – 530

Braun AC (1959) A demonstration of the recovery of the crown-gall tumor cell with the use of complex tumors of single-cell origin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 45: 932 – 938

Caldas C, Hahn SA, da Costa LT, Redston MS, Schutte M, Seymour AB, Weinstein CL, Hruban RH, Yeo CJ, Kern SE (1994) Frequent somatic mutations and homozygous deletions of the p16 (MTS1) gene in pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Nat Genet* 8: 27 – 32

Cantley LC, Dalton WS, DuBois RN, Finn OJ, Futreal PA, Golub TR, Hait WN, Lozano G, Maris JM, Nelson WG, Sawyers CL, Schreiber SL, Spitz MR, Steeg PS (2012) AACR cancer progress report 2012. *Clin Cancer Res* 18: S1 – S100

Carette JE, Pruszak J, Varadarajan M, Blomen VA, Gokhale S, Camargo FD, Wernig M, Jaenisch R, Brummelkamp TR (2010) Generation of iPSCs from cultured human malignant cells. *Blood* 115: 4039 – 4042

Chin L, Tam A, Pomerantz J, Wong M, Holash J, Bardeesy N, Shen Q, O'Hagan R, Pantginis J, Zhou H, Horner JW 2nd, Cordon-Cardo C, Yancopoulos GD, DePinho RA (1999) Essential role for oncogenic RAS in tumour maintenance. *Nature* 400: 468 – 472

Dawson MA, Kouzarides T (2012) Cancer epigenetics: from mechanism to therapy. *Cell* 150: 12 – 27

DePinho RA (2000) The age of cancer. *Nature* 408: 248 – 254

Doi A, Park IH, Wen B, Murakami P, Aryee MJ, Irizarry R, Herb B, Ladd-Acosta C, Rho J, Loewer S, Miller J, Schlaeger T, Daley GQ, Feinberg AP (2009) Differential methylation of tissue- and cancer-specific CpG island shores distinguishes human induced pluripotent stem cells, embryonic stem cells and fibroblasts. *Nat Genet* 41: 1350 – 1353

Esteller M (2007) Cancer epigenomics: DNA methylomes and histone-modification maps. *Nat Rev Genet* 8: 286 – 298

von Figura G, Fukuda A, Roy N, Liku ME, Morris Iv JP, Kim GE, Russ HA, Firpo MA, Mulvihill SJ, Dawson DW, Ferrer J, Mueller WF, Busch A, Hertel KJ, Hebrok M (2014) The chromatin regulator Brg1 suppresses formation of intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm and pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Nat Cell Biol* 16: 255 – 267

Gao D, Vela I, Sboner A, Iaquinta PJ, Karthaus WR, Gopalan A, Dowling C, Wanjala JN, Undvall EA, Arora VK, Wongvipat J, Kossai M, Ramazanoglu S, Barboza LP, Di W, Cao Z, Zhang QF, Sirota I, Ran L, MacDonald TY *et al* (2014) Organoid cultures derived from patients with advanced prostate cancer. *Cell* 159: 176 – 187

Gurdon JB, Elsdale TR, Fischberg M (1958) Sexually mature individuals of *Xenopus laevis* from the transplantation of single somatic nuclei. *Nature* 182: 64 – 65

Hochedlinger K, Blelloch R, Brennan C, Yamada Y, Kim M, Chin L, Jaenisch R (2004) Reprogramming of a melanoma genome by nuclear transplantation. *Genes Dev* 18: 1875 – 1885

Hochedlinger K, Yamada Y, Beard C, Jaenisch R (2005) Ectopic expression of Oct-4 blocks progenitor-cell differentiation and causes dysplasia in epithelial tissues. *Cell* 121: 465 – 477

Ishizawa K, Rasheed ZA, Karisch R, Wang Q, Kowalski J, Susky E, Pereira K, Karamboulas C, Moghal N, Rajeshkumar NV, Hidalgo M, Tsao M, Ailles L, Waddell TK, Maitra A, Neel BG, Matsui W (2010) Tumor-initiating cells are rare in many human tumors. *Cell Stem Cell* 7: 279 – 282

Jones S, Zhang X, Parsons DW, Lin JC, Leary RJ, Angenendt P, Mankoo P, Carter H, Kamiyama H, Jimeno A, Hong SM, Fu B, Lin MT, Calhoun ES, Kamiyama M, Walter K, Nikolskaya T, Nikolsky Y, Hartigan J, Smith DR *et al* (2008) Core signaling pathways in human pancreatic cancers revealed by global genomic analyses. *Science* 321: 1801 – 1806

Kadoch C, Hargreaves DC, Hodges C, Elias L, Ho L, Ranish J, Crabtree GR (2013) Proteomic and bioinformatic analysis of mammalian SWI/SNF complexes identifies extensive roles in human malignancy. *Nat Genet* 45: 592 – 601

Kim J, Hoffman JP, Alpaugh RK, Rhim AD, Reichert M, Stanger BZ, Furth EE, Sepulveda AR, Yuan CX, Won KJ, Donahue G, Sands J, Gumbs AA, Zaret KS (2013) An iPSC line from human pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma undergoes early to invasive stages of pancreatic cancer progression. *Cell Rep* 3: 2088 – 2099

Kim K, Zhao R, Doi A, Ng K, Unternaehrer J, Cahan P, Huo H, Loh YH, Aryee MJ, Lensch MW, Li H, Collins JJ, Feinberg AP, Daley GQ (2011) Donor cell type can influence the epigenome and differentiation potential of human induced pluripotent stem cells. *Nat Biotechnol* 29: 1117 – 1119

Kumano K, Arai S, Hosoi M, Taoka K, Takayama N, Otsu M, Nagae G, Ueda K, Nakazaki K, Kamikubo Y, Eto K, Aburatani H, Nakauchi H, Kurokawa M (2012) Generation of induced pluripotent stem cells from primary chronic myelogenous leukemia patient samples. *Blood* 119: 6234 – 6242

Kumar SM, Liu S, Lu H, Zhang H, Zhang PJ, Gimotty PA, Guerra M, Guo W, Xu X (2012) Acquired cancer stem cell phenotypes through Oct4-mediated dedifferentiation. *Oncogene* 31: 4898 – 4911

Ledford H (2011) Translational research: 4 ways to fix the clinical trial. *Nature* 477: 526 – 528

Li L, Connelly MC, Wetmore C, Curran T, Morgan JI (2003) Mouse embryos cloned from brain tumors. *Cancer Res* 63: 2733 – 2736

Li X, Nadauld L, Ootani A, Corney DC, Pai RK, Gevaert O, Cantrell MA, Rack PG, Neal JT, Chan CW, Yeung T, Gong X, Yuan J, Wilhelmy J, Robine S, Attardi LD, Plevritis SK, Hung KE, Chen CZ, Ji HP *et al* (2014) Oncogenic transformation of diverse gastrointestinal tissues in primary organoid culture. *Nat Med* 20: 769 – 777

Lin TP (1966) Microinjection of mouse eggs. *Science* 151: 333 – 337

Liu S, Leach SD (2011) Zebrafish models for cancer. *Annu Rev Pathol* 6: 71 – 93

McKinnell RG, Deggins BA, Labat DD (1969) Transplantation of pluripotential nuclei from triploid frog tumors. *Science* 165: 394 – 396

Melo JV, Barnes DJ (2007) Chronic myeloid leukaemia as a model of disease evolution in human cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer* 7: 441 – 453

Mintz B, Illmensee K (1975) Normal genetically mosaic mice produced from malignant teratocarcinoma cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 72: 3585 – 3589

Miyoshi N, Ishii H, Nagai K, Hoshino H, Mimori K, Tanaka F, Nagano H, Sekimoto M, Doki Y, Mori M (2010) Defined factors induce reprogramming of gastrointestinal cancer cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 107: 40 – 45

Muller R, Slamon DJ, Tremblay JM, Cline MJ, Verma IM (1982) Differential expression of cellular oncogenes during pre- and postnatal development of the mouse. *Nature* 299: 640 – 644

Murphy SJ, Hart SN, Lima JF, Kipp BR, Klebig M, Winters JL, Szabo C, Zhang L, Eckloff BW, Petersen GM, Scherer SE, Gibbs RA, McWilliams RR, Vasmatzis G, Couch FJ (2013) Genetic alterations associated with progression from pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia to invasive pancreatic tumor. *Gastroenterology* 145: 1098 – 1109 e1091

Nardella C, Lunardi A, Patnaik A, Cantley LC, Pandolfi PP (2011) The APL paradigm and the "co-clinical trial" project. *Cancer Discov* 1: 108 – 116

Nguyen LV, Vanner R, Dirks P, Eaves CJ (2012) Cancer stem cells: an evolving concept. *Nat Rev Cancer* 12: 133 – 143

Nigro JM, Baker SJ, Preisinger AC, Jessup JM, Hostetter R, Cleary K, Bigner SH, Davidson N, Baylin S, Devilee P, Glover T, Collins FS, Weslon A, Modali R, Harris CC, Vogelstein B (1989) Mutations in the p53 gene occur in diverse human tumour types. *Nature* 342: 705 – 708

Ohgaki H, Kleihues P (2013) The definition of primary and secondary glioblastoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 19: 764 – 772

Ohnishi K, Semi K, Yamamoto T, Shimizu M, Tanaka A, Mitsunaga K, Okita K, Osafune K, Arioka Y, Maeda T, Soejima H, Moriwaki H, Yamanaka S, Woltjen K, Yamada Y (2014) Premature termination of reprogramming in vivo leads to cancer development through altered epigenetic regulation. *Cell* 156: 663 – 677

Pachnis V, Mankoo B, Costantini F (1993) Expression of the c-ret proto-oncogene during mouse embryogenesis. *Development* 119: 1005 – 1017

Pfeifer-Ohlsson S, Goustin AS, Rydnert J, Wahlstrom T, Bjersing L, Stehelin D, Ohlsson R (1984) Spatial and temporal pattern of cellular myc oncogene expression in developing human placenta: implications for embryonic cell proliferation. *Cell* 38: 585 – 596

Pfeifer-Ohlsson S, Rydnert J, Goustin AS, Larsson E, Betsholtz C, Ohlsson R (1985) Cell-type-specific pattern of myc protooncogene expression in developing human embryos. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 82: 5050 – 5054

Postovit LM, Seftor EA, Seftor RE, Hendrix MJ (2006) A three-dimensional model to study the epigenetic effects induced by the microenvironment of human embryonic stem cells. *Stem Cells* 24: 501 – 505

Postovit LM, Margaryan NV, Seftor EA, Kirschmann DA, Lipavsky A, Wheaton WW, Abbott DE, Seftor RE, Hendrix MJ (2008) Human embryonic stem cell microenvironment suppresses the tumorigenic phenotype of aggressive cancer cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 105: 4329 – 4334

Ram O, Goren A, Amit I, Shoresh N, Yosef N, Ernst J, Kellis M, Gymrek M, Issner R, Coyne M, Durham T, Zhang X, Donaghey J, Epstein CB, Regev A, Bernstein BE (2011) Combinatorial patterning of chromatin regulators uncovered by genome-wide location analysis in human cells. *Cell* 147: 1628 – 1639

Rangarajan A, Weinberg RA (2003) Opinion: comparative biology of mouse versus human cells: modelling human cancer in mice. *Nat Rev Cancer* 3: 952 – 959

Rivlin N, Katz S, Doody M, Sheffer M, Horesh S, Molchadsky A, Koifman G, Shetzer Y, Goldfinger N, Rotter V, Geiger T (2014) Rescue of embryonic stem cells from cellular transformation by proteomic stabilization of mutant p53 and conversion into WT conformation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 111: 7006 – 7011

Sabapathy K, Klemm M, Jaenisch R, Wagner EF (1997) Regulation of ES cell differentiation by functional and conformational modulation of p53. *EMBO J* 16: 6217 – 6229

Sanchez MJ, Holmes A, Miles C, Dzierzak E (1996) Characterization of the first definitive hematopoietic stem cells in the AGM and liver of the mouse embryo. *Immunity* 5: 513 – 525

Shain AH, Giacomini CP, Matsukuma K, Karikari CA, Bashyam MD, Hidalgo M, Maitra A, Pollack JR (2012) Convergent structural alterations define SWItch/Sucrose NonFermentable (SWI/SNF) chromatin remodeler as a central tumor suppressive complex in pancreatic cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 109: E252 – E259

Sharma SV, Haber DA, Settleman J (2010) Cell line-based platforms to evaluate the therapeutic efficacy of candidate anticancer agents. *Nat Rev Cancer* 10: 241 – 253

Shultz LD, Lyons BL, Burzenski LM, Gott B, Chen X, Chaleff S, Kotb M, Gillies SD, King M, Mangada J, Greiner DL, Handgretinger R (2005) Human lymphoid and myeloid cell development in NOD/LtSz-scid IL2R gamma null mice engrafted with mobilized human hemopoietic stem cells. *J Immunol* 174: 6477 – 6489

Singhal N, Graumann J, Wu G, Arauzo-Bravo MJ, Han DW, Greber B, Gentile L, Mann M, Scholer HR (2010) Chromatin-remodeling components of the BAF complex facilitate reprogramming. *Cell* 141: 943 – 955

Slamon DJ, Cline MJ (1984) Expression of cellular oncogenes during embryonic and fetal development of the mouse. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 81: 7141 – 7145

Stricker SH, Feber A, Engstrom PG, Caren H, Kurian KM, Takashima Y, Watts C, Way M, Dirks P, Bertone P, Smith A, Beck S, Pollard SM (2013) Widespread resetting of DNA methylation in glioblastoma-initiating cells suppresses malignant cellular behavior in a lineage-dependent manner. *Genes Dev* 27: 654 – 669

Suva ML, Riggi N, Bernstein BE (2013) Epigenetic reprogramming in cancer. *Science* 339: 1567 – 1570

Takahashi K, Yamanaka S (2006) Induction of pluripotent stem cells from mouse embryonic and adult fibroblast cultures by defined factors. *Cell* 126: 663 – 676

Tentler JJ, Tan AC, Weekes CD, Jimeno A, Leong S, Pitts TM, Arcaroli JJ, Messersmith WA, Eckhardt SG (2012) Patient-derived tumour xenografts as models for oncology drug development. *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 9: 338 – 350

Thompson SL, Compton DA (2010) Proliferation of aneuploid human cells is limited by a p53-dependent mechanism. *J Cell Biol* 188: 369 – 381

Tuveson DA, Jacks T (2002) Technologically advanced cancer modeling in mice. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 12: 105 – 110

Verbeek BS, Vroom TM, Adriaansen-Slot SS, Ottenhoff-Kalff AE, Geertzema JG, Hennipman A, Rijksen G (1996) c-Src protein expression is increased in human breast cancer. An immunohistochemical and biochemical analysis. *J Pathol* 180: 383 – 388

Wang ZQ, Kiefer F, Urbanek P, Wagner EF (1997) Generation of completely embryonic stem cell-derived mutant mice using tetraploid blastocyst injection. *Mech Dev* 62: 137 – 145

Wang ZY, Chen Z (2008) Acute promyelocytic leukemia: from highly fatal to highly curable. *Blood* 111: 2505 – 2515

Wilkinson DG, Bailes JA, McMahon AP (1987) Expression of the proto-oncogene int-1 is restricted to specific neural cells in the developing mouse embryo. *Cell* 50: 79 – 88

Wilson BG, Roberts CW (2011) SWI/SNF nucleosome remodellers and cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer* 11: 481 – 492

Wu M, Jung L, Cooper AB, Fleet C, Chen L, Breault L, Clark K, Cai Z, Vincent S, Bottega S, Shen Q, Richardson A, Bosenburg M, Naber SP, DePinho RA, Kuperwasser C, Robinson MO (2009) Dissecting genetic requirements of human breast tumorigenesis in a tissue transgenic model of human breast cancer in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 106: 7022 – 7027

Yachida S, Jones S, Bozic I, Antal T, Leary R, Fu B, Kamiyama M, Hruban RH, Eshleman JR, Nowak MA, Velculescu VE, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA (2010) Distant metastasis occurs late during the genetic evolution of pancreatic cancer. *Nature* 467: 1114 – 1117

Zhang X, Cruz FD, Terry M, Remotti F, Matushansky I (2013) Terminal differentiation and loss of tumorigenicity of human cancers via pluripotency-based reprogramming. *Oncogene* 32: 2249 – 2260, 2260 e2241–2221

THE EMBO JOURNAL

Programming and reprogramming a human heart cell

Makoto Sahara*[,1,2,] Federica Santoro1 and Kenneth R Chien*[,1,2]

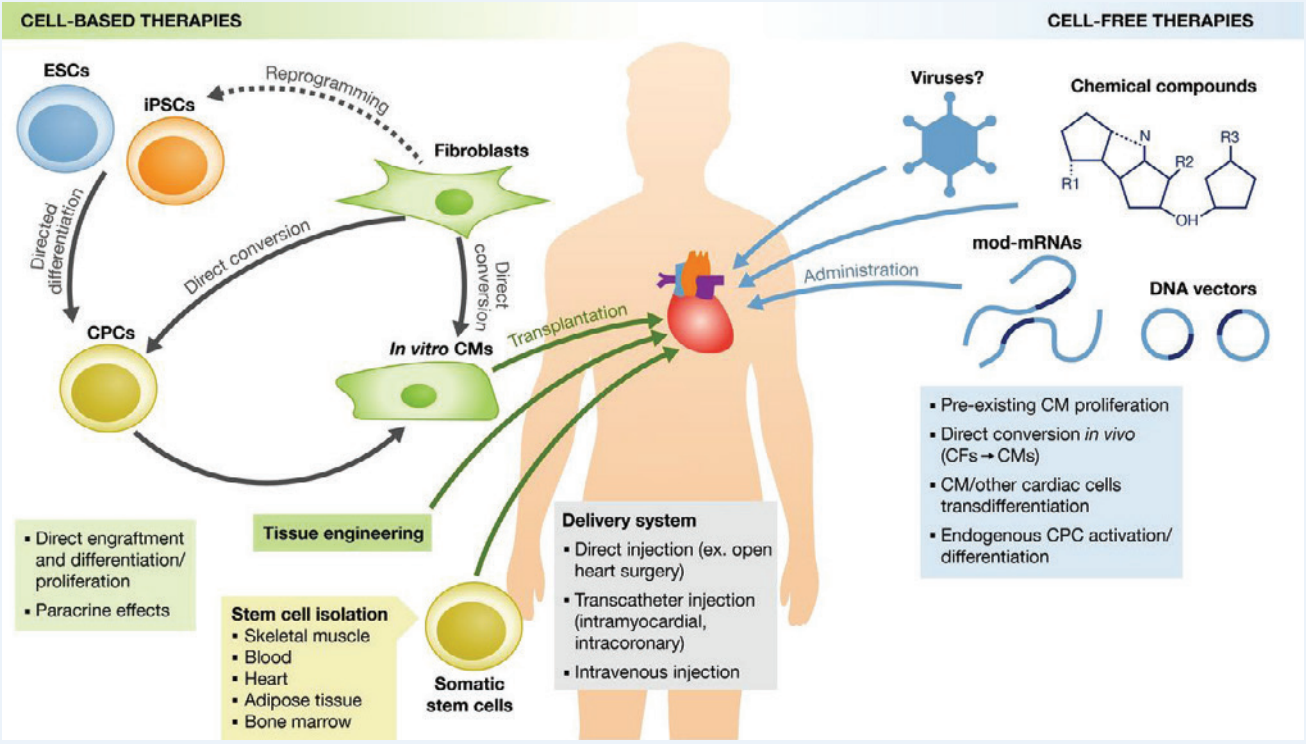
[1]Department of Cell and Molecular Biology, Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden
[2]Department of Medicine-Cardiology, Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden

* Corresponding author. Tel: +46 8 524 874 79; Fax: +46 8 31 11 01; E-mail: makoto.sahara@ki.se

DOI 10.15252/embj.201490563 | Published online 20.02.2015
The EMBO Journal (2015) 34, 710-738

The latest discoveries and advanced knowledge in the fields of stem cell biology and developmental cardiology hold great promise for cardiac regenerative medicine, enabling researchers to design novel therapeutic tools and approaches to regenerate cardiac muscle for diseased hearts. However, progress in this arena has been hampered by a lack of reproducible and convincing evidence, which at best has yielded modest outcomes and is still far from clinical practice. To address current controversies and move cardiac regenerative therapeutics forward, it is crucial to gain a deeper understanding of the key cellular and molecular programs involved in human cardiogenesis and cardiac regeneration. In this review, we consider the fundamental principles that govern the "programming" and "reprogramming" of a human heart cell and discuss updated therapeutic strategies to regenerate a damaged heart.

Synopsis:



Kenneth Chien and colleagues review molecular principles of cardiogenesis, which hold great promise for regenerative "programming" or "reprogramming" of human heart conditions.

OPEN ACCESS

THE EMBO JOURNAL

Reprogramming of cell fate: epigenetic memory and the erasure of memories past

Buhe Nashun[1,†], Peter WS Hill[1,†] and Petra Hajkova[*,1]

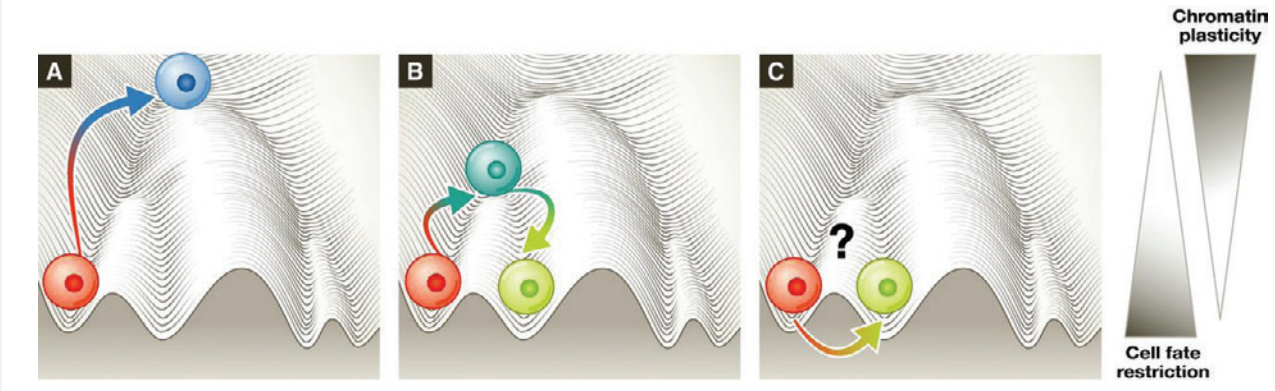
[1]Medical Research Council Clinical Sciences Centre, Faculty of Medicine, Imperial College London, London, UK

*Corresponding author. Tel: +44 20 83838264; E-mail: petra.hajkova@csc.mrc.ac.uk
† These authors contributed equally to this work

DOI 10.15252/embj.201490649 | Published online 27.03.2015
The EMBO Journal (2015) 34, 1296-1308

Cell identity is a reflection of a cell type-specific gene expression profile, and consequently, cell type-specific transcription factor networks are considered to be at the heart of a given cellular phenotype. Although generally stable, cell identity can be reprogrammed *in vitro* by forced changes to the transcriptional network, the most dramatic example of which was shown by the induction of pluripotency in somatic cells by the ectopic expression of defined transcription factors alone. Although changes to cell fate can be achieved in this way, the efficiency of such conversion remains very low, in large part due to specific chromatin signatures constituting an epigenetic barrier to the transcription factor-mediated reprogramming processes. Here we discuss the two-way relationship between transcription factor binding and chromatin structure during cell fate reprogramming. We additionally explore the potential roles and mechanisms by which histone variants, chromatin remodelling enzymes, and histone and DNA modifications contribute to the stability of cell identity and/or provide a permissive environment for cell fate change during cellular reprogramming.

Synopsis:



Petra Hajkova & colleagues feature the interplay of chromatin structure with cell fate determining transcription factors as therapeutic opportunity in the context of cellular reprogramming.

THE EMBO JOURNAL

Application of biomaterials to advance induced pluripotent stem cell research and therapy

Zhixiang Tong[1,2,3], Aniruddh Solanki[1,2,3], Allison Hamilos[1,2,3], Oren Levy[1,2,3], Kendall Wen[1,2,3], Xiaolei Yin[1,2,3,4] and Jeffrey M Karp[*,1,2,3]

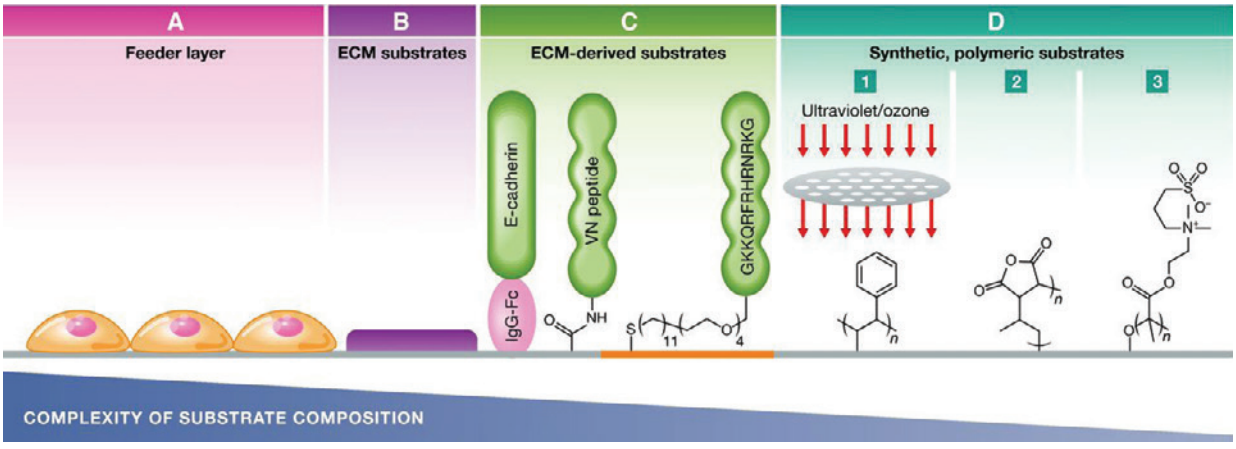
[1]Division of Biomedical Engineering, Department of Medicine, Center for Regenerative Therapeutics, Brigham and Women's Hospital Harvard Medical School, Cambridge, MA, USA
[2]Harvard Stem Cell Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA
[3]Harvard-MIT Division of Health Sciences and Technology, Cambridge, MA, USA
[4]David H. Koch Institute for Integrative Cancer Research, Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), Cambridge, MA, USA

*Corresponding author. Tel: +1 617 817 9174; E-mail: jeffkarp.bwh@gmail.com

DOI 10.15252/embj.201490756 | Published online 12.03.2015
The EMBO Journal (2015) 34, 987-1008

Derived from any somatic cell type and possessing unlimited self-renewal and differentiation potential, induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs) are poised to revolutionize stem cell biology and regenerative medicine research, bringing unprecedented opportunities for treating debilitating human diseases. To overcome the limitations associated with safety, efficiency, and scalability of traditional iPSC derivation, expansion, and differentiation protocols, biomaterials have recently been considered. Beyond addressing these limitations, the integration of biomaterials with existing iPSC culture platforms could offer additional opportunities to better probe the biology and control the behavior of iPSCs or their progeny *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Herein, we discuss the impact of biomaterials on the iPSC field, from derivation to tissue regeneration and modeling. Although still exploratory, we envision the emerging combination of biomaterials and iPSCs will be critical in the successful application of iPSCs and their progeny for research and clinical translation.

Synopsis:



Karp and colleagues critically review state-of-the-art biomaterials essential to fully exploit the translational potential of the iPS technologies.

THE EMBO JOURNAL

Forward engineering neuronal diversity using direct reprogramming

Rachel K Tsunemoto[1], Kevin T Eade[1], Joel W Blanchard[1] and Kristin K Baldwin[*,1]

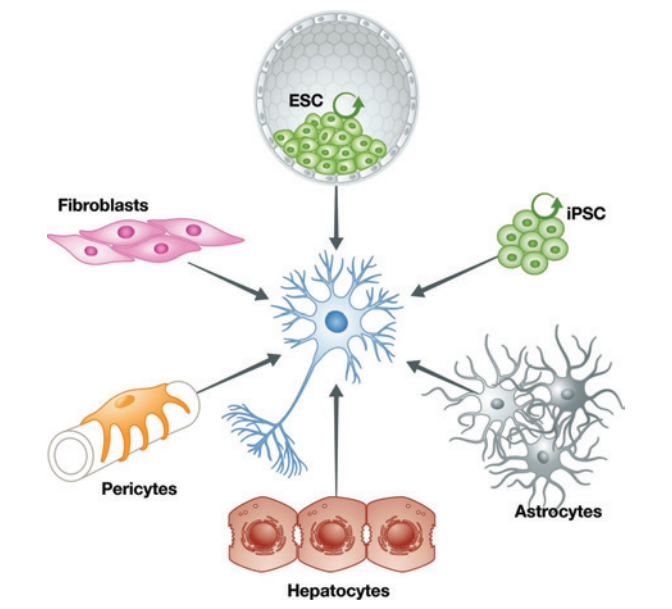
[1]The Scripps Research Institute, La Jolla, CA, USA

*Corresponding author. Tel: +1 858 784 9466; E-mail: kbaldwin@scripps.edu

DOI 10.15252/embj.201591402 | Published online 23.04.2015
The EMBO Journal (2015) embj.201591402

The nervous system is comprised of a vast diversity of distinct neural cell types. Differences between neuronal subtypes drive the assembly of neuronal circuits and underlie the subtype specificity of many neurological diseases. Yet, because neurons are irreversibly post-mitotic and not readily available from patients, it has not been feasible to study specific subtypes of human neurons in larger numbers. A powerful means to study neuronal diversity and neurological disease is to establish methods to produce desired neuronal subtypes *in vitro*. Traditionally this has been accomplished by treating pluripotent or neural stem cells with growth factors and morphogens that recapitulate exogenous developmental signals. These approaches often require extended periods of culture, which can limit their utility. However, more recently, it has become possible to produce neurons directly from fibroblasts using transcription factors and/or microRNAs. This technique referred to as direct reprogramming or transdifferentiation has proven to be a rapid, robust, and reproducible method to generate mature neurons of many different subtypes from multiple cell sources. Here, we highlight recent advances in generating neurons of specific subtypes using direct reprogramming and outline various scenarios in which induced neurons may be applied to studies of neuronal function and neurological disease.

Synopsis



Kristin Baldwin & colleagues outline most recent routes to generate a huge spectrum of neuronal subtypes *in vitro*. Their functionality and resemblance of endogenous tissue raises hopes for cell replacement therapies.

THE EMBO JOURNAL

Toward beta cell replacement for diabetes

Bjarki Johannesson[1], Lina Sui[2], Donald O Freytes[1], Remi J Creusot[3] and Dieter Egli[*,1,2]

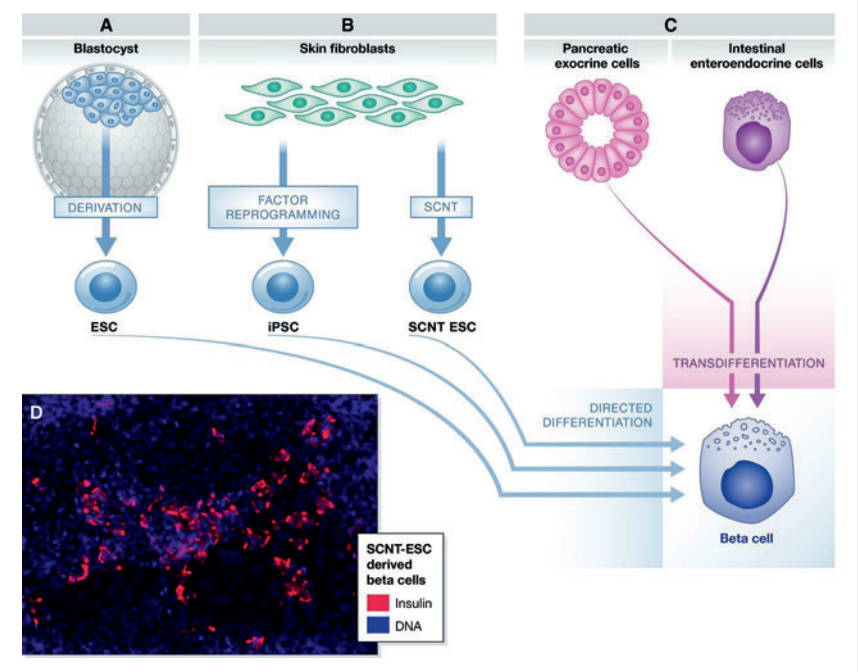
[1]The New York Stem Cell Foundation Research Institute, New York, NY, USA
[2]Naomi Berrie Diabetes Center & Department of Pediatrics, College of Physicians and Surgeons, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA
[3]Columbia Center for Translational Immunology, Department of Medicine and Naomi Berrie Diabetes Center, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

*Corresponding author. Tel: +1 212 851 4890; E-mail: de2220@cumc.columbia.edu

DOI 10.15252/embj.201490685 | Published online 02.03.2015
The EMBO Journal (2015) 34, 841-855

The discovery of insulin more than 90 years ago introduced a life-saving treatment for patients with type 1 diabetes, and since then, significant progress has been made in clinical care for all forms of diabetes. However, no method of insulin delivery matches the ability of the human pancreas to reliably and automatically maintain glucose levels within a tight range. Transplantation of human islets or of an intact pancreas can in principle cure diabetes, but this approach is generally reserved for cases with simultaneous transplantation of a kidney, where immunosuppression is already a requirement. Recent advances in cell reprogramming and beta cell differentiation now allow the generation of personalized stem cells, providing an unlimited source of beta cells for research and for developing autologous cell therapies. In this review, we will discuss the utility of stem cell-derived beta cells to investigate the mechanisms of beta cell failure in diabetes, and the challenges to develop beta cell replacement therapies. These challenges include appropriate quality controls of the cells being used, the ability to generate beta cell grafts of stable cellular composition, and in the case of type 1 diabetes, protecting implanted cells from autoimmune destruction without compromising other aspects of the immune system or the functionality of the graft. Such novel treatments will need to match or exceed the relative safety and efficacy of available care for diabetes.

Synopsis



Dieter Egli & colleagues provide a stem cell perspective on pancreatic beta-cells for diabetes therapies and disease modeling.